

# Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Bill

---

---

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

Explanatory notes to the Bill, prepared by the Ministry of Justice, are published separately as HL Bill 109 – EN.

## EUROPEAN CONVENTION ON HUMAN RIGHTS

Lord McNally has made the following statement under section 19(1)(a) of the Human Rights Act 1998:

In my view the provisions of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Bill are compatible with the Convention rights.

# Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Bill

---

---

## CONTENTS

### PART 1

#### LEGAL AID

##### *Provision of legal aid*

- 1 Lord Chancellor's functions
- 2 Arrangements
- 3 Standards of service
- 4 Director of Legal Aid Casework
- 5 Delegation
- 6 Authorisations

##### *Civil legal aid*

- 7 Civil legal services
- 8 General cases
- 9 Exceptional cases
- 10 Qualifying for civil legal aid
- 11 Determinations

##### *Criminal legal aid*

- 12 Advice and assistance for individuals in custody
- 13 Criminal proceedings
- 14 Advice and assistance for criminal proceedings
- 15 Representation for criminal proceedings
- 16 Qualifying for representation
- 17 Determinations by Director
- 18 Determinations by court
- 19 Provisional determinations

##### *Financial resources*

- 20 Financial resources
- 21 Information about financial resources

*Contributions and costs*

- 22 Payment for services
- 23 Enforcement
- 24 Charges on property in connection with civil legal services
- 25 Costs in civil proceedings

*Providers of services etc*

- 26 Choice of provider of services etc
- 27 Position of providers of services
- 28 Code of conduct
- 29 Position of other parties, courts and tribunals

*Supplementary*

- 30 Legal aid for legal persons
- 31 Foreign law
- 32 Restriction on disclosure of information about financial resources
- 33 Restriction on disclosure of other information
- 34 Exceptions from restriction under section 33
- 35 Misrepresentation
- 36 Status of Director and Lord Chancellor
- 37 Abolition of Legal Services Commission
- 38 Consequential amendments
- 39 Northern Ireland: information about financial resources
- 40 Orders, regulations and directions
- 41 Interpretation
- 42 Crown application

**PART 2**

## LITIGATION FUNDING AND COSTS

*Payments for legal services in civil cases*

- 43 Conditional fee agreements: success fees
- 44 Damages-based agreements
- 45 Recovery of insurance premiums by way of costs
- 46 Recovery where body undertakes to meet costs liabilities
- 47 Divorce etc proceedings: orders for payment in respect of legal services
- 48 Divorce etc proceedings: matters to be considered by court making legal services order
- 49 Divorce etc proceedings: orders for sale of property
- 50 Dissolution etc proceedings: orders for payment in respect of legal services
- 51 Dissolution etc proceedings: matters to be considered by court making legal services order
- 52 Dissolution etc proceedings: orders for sale of property

*Offers to settle*

- 53 Payment of additional amount to successful claimant

*Referral fees*

- 54 Rules against referral fees
- 55 Effect of the rules against referral fees
- 56 Regulation by the FSA
- 57 Regulators and regulated persons
- 58 Referral fees: regulations

*Costs in criminal cases*

- 59 Costs in criminal cases

**PART 3**

SENTENCING AND PUNISHMENT OF OFFENDERS

**CHAPTER 1**

SENTENCING

*General*

- 60 Court's duty to consider compensation order
- 61 Duty to give reasons for and to explain effect of sentence

*Community orders*

- 62 Duration of community order
- 63 Breach of community order

*Suspended sentence orders*

- 64 Changes to powers to make suspended sentence order
- 65 Fine for breach of suspended sentence order

*Requirements under community orders and suspended sentence orders*

- 66 Programme requirement
- 67 Curfew requirement
- 68 Foreign travel prohibition requirement
- 69 Mental health treatment requirement
- 70 Drug rehabilitation requirement
- 71 Alcohol treatment requirement

*Overseas community orders and service community orders*

- 72 Overseas community orders and service community orders

*Youth sentences*

- 73 Referral orders for young offenders
- 74 Breach of detention and training order
- 75 Youth rehabilitation order: curfew requirement
- 76 Youth rehabilitation order: mental health treatment requirement
- 77 Youth rehabilitation order: duration

- 78 Youth rehabilitation order: fine for breach

*Fines*

- 79 Removal of limit on certain fines on conviction by magistrates' court  
80 Power to increase certain other fines on conviction by magistrates' court  
81 Power to amend standard scale of fines for summary offences

*Repeal of uncommenced provisions*

- 82 Custody plus orders and intermittent custody orders

**CHAPTER 2**

**BAIL**

- 83 Amendment of bail enactments

**CHAPTER 3**

**REMANDS OF CHILDREN OTHERWISE THAN ON BAIL**

*Remands*

- 84 Remands of children otherwise than on bail

*Remands to local authority accommodation*

- 85 Remands to local authority accommodation  
86 Conditions etc on remands to local authority accommodation  
87 Requirements for electronic monitoring  
88 Requirements for electronic monitoring: extradition cases  
89 Further provisions about electronic monitoring  
90 Liability to arrest for breaking conditions of remand

*Remands to youth detention accommodation*

- 91 First set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation  
92 Second set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation  
93 First set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation:  
extradition cases  
94 Second set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation:  
extradition cases  
95 Remands to youth detention accommodation

*Supplementary*

- 96 Arrangements for remands  
97 Looked after child status  
98 Minor and consequential amendments  
99 Interpretation of Chapter

## CHAPTER 4

### RELEASE ON LICENCE ETC

#### *Calculation of days to be served*

- 100 Crediting of periods of remand in custody
- 101 Crediting of periods of remand on bail
- 102 Amendments consequential on sections 100 and 101

#### *Release*

- 103 Prisoners serving less than 12 months
- 104 Restrictions on early release subject to curfew

#### *Further release after recall*

- 105 Cancellation of revocation of licence
- 106 Further release after recall

#### *Other provisions about release*

- 107 Supervision of young offenders after release
- 108 Miscellaneous amendments relating to release and recall
- 109 Repeal of uncommenced provisions

#### *Life sentence prisoners*

- 110 Removal of prisoners from the United Kingdom

#### *Application and transitional provision*

- 111 Application and transitional etc provision

#### *Restatement of earlier enactments and transitional provisions*

- 112 Power to restate earlier enactments and existing transitional provisions

## CHAPTER 5

### DANGEROUS OFFENDERS

- 113 Abolition of certain sentences for dangerous offenders
- 114 Life sentence for second listed offence
- 115 New extended sentences
- 116 New extended sentences: release on licence etc
- 117 Power to change test for release on licence of certain prisoners

## CHAPTER 6

### PRISONERS ETC

- 118 Employment in prisons: deductions etc from payments to prisoners
- 119 Transfer of prisoners: prosecution of other offences

- 120 Transit of prisoners

## CHAPTER 7

### OUT OF COURT DISPOSALS

#### *Penalty notices*

- 121 Penalty notices for disorderly behaviour

#### *Cautions*

- 122 Conditional cautions: involvement of prosecutors  
123 Conditional cautions: removal etc of certain foreign offenders

#### *Youth cautions*

- 124 Youth cautions  
125 Youth conditional cautions: previous convictions  
126 Youth conditional cautions: references to youth offending teams  
127 Youth conditional cautions: involvement of prosecutors

## CHAPTER 8

### OFFENCES

- 128 Offences of threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon in public or on school premises  
129 Causing serious injury by dangerous driving  
130 Offence of squatting in a residential building  
131 Reasonable force for the purposes of self-defence etc

## PART 4

### FINAL PROVISIONS

- 132 Power to make consequential and supplementary provision etc  
133 Financial provision  
134 Commencement  
135 Extent  
136 Channel Islands, Isle of Man and British overseas territories  
137 Short title

- 
- Schedule 1 – Civil legal services  
     Part 1 – Services  
     Part 2 – Excluded services  
     Part 3 – Advocacy: exclusion and exceptions  
     Part 4 – Interpretation  
 Schedule 2 – Criminal legal aid: motor vehicle orders  
 Schedule 3 – Legal aid for legal persons

- Schedule 4 – Transfer of employees and property etc of Legal Services Commission
  - Part 1 – Transfer of employees etc
  - Part 2 – Transfer of property etc
  - Part 3 – Supplementary
- Schedule 5 – Legal aid: consequential amendments
  - Part 1 – Amendments
  - Part 2 – Repeals consequential on Part 1 of this Schedule
- Schedule 6 – Northern Ireland: information about financial resources
- Schedule 7 – Costs in criminal cases
  - Part 1 – Prosecution of Offences Act 1985
  - Part 2 – Attorney General’s references
  - Part 3 – Extradition Act 2003
  - Part 4 – Savings
- Schedule 8 – Costs in criminal cases: service courts
  - Part 1 – Appeals from Court Martial
  - Part 2 – Appeals from Court Martial Appeal Court
  - Part 3 – Savings
- Schedule 9 – Changes to powers to make suspended sentence orders: consequential and transitory provision
  - Part 1 – Consequential amendments
  - Part 2 – Transitory provision
- Schedule 10 – Repeal of sections 181 to 188 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003: consequential amendments
- Schedule 11 – Amendment of enactments relating to bail
- Schedule 12 – Remands of children otherwise than on bail: minor and consequential amendments
- Schedule 13 – Crediting of time in custody: Armed Forces amendments
- Schedule 14 – Prisoners serving less than 12 months: consequential amendments
- Schedule 15 – Application of sections 100 to 110 and transitional and transitory provisions
- Schedule 16 – Life sentence for second listed offence etc: new Schedule 15B to Criminal Justice Act 2003
- Schedule 17 – Life sentence for second listed offence: consequential and transitory provision
  - Part 1 – Consequential provision
  - Part 2 – Transitory provision
- Schedule 18 – New extended sentences: consequential and transitory provision
  - Part 1 – Consequential provision
  - Part 2 – Transitory provision
- Schedule 19 – Release of new extended sentence prisoners: consequential provision
- Schedule 20 – Penalty notices for disorderly behaviour
- Schedule 21 – Youth cautions: consequential amendments
- Schedule 22 – Knives and offensive weapons: minor and consequential amendments
- Schedule 23 – Causing serious injury by dangerous driving: minor and consequential amendments



A  
**B I L L**

TO

Make provision about legal aid; to make further provision about funding legal services; to make provision about costs and other amounts awarded in civil and criminal proceedings; to make provision about referral fees in connection with the provision of legal services; to make provision about sentencing offenders, including provision about release on licence or otherwise; to make provision about bail and about remand otherwise than on bail; to make provision about the employment, payment and transfer of persons detained in prisons and other institutions; to make provision about penalty notices for disorderly behaviour and cautions; to create new offences of threatening with a weapon in public or on school premises and of causing serious injury by dangerous driving; to create a new offence relating to squatting; and to amend section 76 of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008.

**B**E IT ENACTED by the Queen’s most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

**PART 1**

LEGAL AID

*Provision of legal aid*

**1 Lord Chancellor’s functions**

- (1) The Lord Chancellor must secure that legal aid is made available in accordance with this Part. 5
- (2) In this Part “legal aid” means—
- (a) civil legal services required to be made available under section 8 or 9 or paragraph 3 of Schedule 3 (civil legal aid), and
  - (b) services consisting of advice, assistance and representation required to be made available under section 12, 14 or 15 or paragraph 4 or 5 of Schedule 3 (criminal legal aid). 10

- (3) The Lord Chancellor may secure the provision of –
- (a) general information about the law and the legal system, and
  - (b) information about the availability of advice about, and assistance in connection with, the law and the legal system.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may do anything which is calculated to facilitate, or is incidental or conducive to, the carrying out of the Lord Chancellor’s functions under this Part. 5
- (5) Nothing in this Part affects the powers that the Lord Chancellor has otherwise than under this Part.
- 2 Arrangements 10**
- (1) The Lord Chancellor may make such arrangements as the Lord Chancellor considers appropriate for the purposes of carrying out the Lord Chancellor’s functions under this Part.
- (2) The Lord Chancellor may, in particular, make arrangements by –
- (a) making grants or loans to enable persons to provide services or facilitate the provision of services, 15
  - (b) making grants or loans to individuals to enable them to obtain services, and
  - (c) establishing and maintaining a body to provide services or facilitate the provision of services. 20
- (3) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations make provision about the payment of remuneration by the Lord Chancellor to persons who provide services under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part.
- (4) If the Lord Chancellor makes arrangements for the purposes of this Part that provide for a court, tribunal or other person to assess remuneration payable by the Lord Chancellor, the court, tribunal or person must assess the remuneration in accordance with the arrangements and, if relevant, with regulations under subsection (3). 25
- (5) The Lord Chancellor may make different arrangements, in particular, in relation to – 30
- (a) different areas in England and Wales,
  - (b) different descriptions of case, and
  - (c) different classes of person.
- 3 Standards of service**
- (1) The Lord Chancellor may set and monitor standards in relation to services made available under this Part. 35
- (2) The Lord Chancellor may, in particular, make arrangements for the accreditation of persons providing, or wishing to provide, such services by –
- (a) the Lord Chancellor, or
  - (b) persons authorised by the Lord Chancellor. 40
- (3) Arrangements for accreditation must include –
- (a) arrangements for monitoring services provided by accredited persons, and

- 
- (b) arrangements for withdrawing accreditation where the services provided are unsatisfactory.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may impose charges in connection with—
- (a) accreditation,
  - (b) monitoring services provided by accredited persons, and
  - (c) authorising accreditation by others.
- (5) Persons authorised by the Lord Chancellor may, in accordance with the terms of their authorisation, impose charges in connection with—
- (a) accreditation, and
  - (b) monitoring services provided by accredited persons.
- 4 Director of Legal Aid Casework**
- (1) The Lord Chancellor must designate a civil servant as the Director of Legal Aid Casework (“the Director”).
- (2) The Lord Chancellor must make arrangements for the provision to the Director by civil servants or other persons (or both) of such assistance as the Lord Chancellor considers appropriate.
- (3) The Director must—
- (a) comply with directions given by the Lord Chancellor about the carrying out of the Director’s functions under this Part, and
  - (b) have regard to guidance given by the Lord Chancellor about the carrying out of those functions.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may not give directions or guidance about the carrying out of those functions in relation to individual cases.
- (5) The Lord Chancellor must publish any directions and guidance given about the carrying out of those functions.
- (6) Directions and guidance under this section may be revised or withdrawn from time to time.
- 5 Delegation**
- (1) The following functions of the Lord Chancellor may be exercised by, or by employees of, a person authorised by the Lord Chancellor for that purpose—
- (a) securing the provision of information under section 1(3), and
  - (b) setting and monitoring standards under section 3.
- (2) Regulations may provide for a function of the Lord Chancellor under regulations made under this Part to be exercisable by, or by employees of, a person authorised by the Lord Chancellor for that purpose.
- (3) The functions conferred on the Director by this Part may be exercised by, or by employees of, a person authorised by the Director for that purpose.
- (4) Regulations may provide for a function of the Director under regulations made under this Part to be exercisable by, or by employees of, a person authorised by the Director for that purpose.
- (5) A direction given by the Lord Chancellor under section 4 about the carrying out of the Director’s functions may, in particular, require the Director—

- 
- (a) to authorise, or not to authorise, a person to carry out a function specified in the direction, or
  - (b) to authorise, or not to authorise, a person specified, or of a description specified, in the direction to carry out such a function.
- (6) Regulations under subsection (2) or (4) may provide that a function may be exercised – 5
- (a) wholly or to a limited extent;
  - (b) generally or in particular cases or areas;
  - (c) unconditionally or subject to conditions.
- (7) An authorisation given for the purposes of this section or regulations under this section may provide that a function may be exercised – 10
- (a) wholly or to a limited extent;
  - (b) generally or in particular cases or areas;
  - (c) unconditionally or subject to conditions.
- (8) In the case of an authorisation given for the purposes of regulations under this section, subsection (7) is subject to the provisions of the regulations. 15
- 6 Authorisations**
- (1) An authorisation given for the purposes of section 5 or regulations under that section – 20
- (a) may specify its duration,
  - (b) may specify or describe the authorised person,
  - (c) may be varied or revoked at any time by the person who gave it, and
  - (d) does not prevent the Lord Chancellor, the Director or another person from exercising the function to which the authorisation relates.
- (2) Anything done or omitted to be done by or in relation to a person authorised under section 5(1) or regulations under section 5(2) (or an employee of such a person) in, or in connection with, the exercise or purported exercise of the function concerned is to be treated for all purposes as done or omitted to be done by the Lord Chancellor. 25
- (3) Anything done or omitted to be done by or in relation to a person authorised under section 5(3) or regulations under section 5(4) (or an employee of such a person) in, or in connection with, the exercise or purported exercise of the function concerned is to be treated for all purposes as done or omitted to be done by the Director. 30
- (4) Subsections (2) and (3) – 35
- (a) do not affect the rights and liabilities of the authorised person or the Lord Chancellor under any arrangements made between them,
  - (b) do not prevent any civil proceedings which could otherwise be brought by or against the authorised person (or an employee of that person) from being brought, 40
  - (c) do not apply for the purposes of criminal proceedings brought in respect of anything done or omitted to be done by the authorised person (or an employee of that person), and
  - (d) do not make the Lord Chancellor or the Director liable under section 6 of the Human Rights Act 1998 in respect of any act or omission of an authorised person if the act or omission is of a private nature. 45

- (5) Where—
- (a) an authorisation given for the purposes of section 5 or regulations under that section is revoked, and
  - (b) at the time of the revocation so much of any contract made between the authorised person and the Lord Chancellor as relates to the exercise of the function is subsisting,
- the authorised person is entitled to treat the contract as repudiated by the Lord Chancellor (and not as frustrated by reason of the revocation). 5
- (6) In this section “authorised person” means a person authorised for the purposes of section 5 or regulations under that section. 10

*Civil legal aid*

**7 Civil legal services**

- (1) In this Part “legal services” means the following types of services—
- (a) providing advice as to how the law applies in particular circumstances,
  - (b) providing advice and assistance in relation to legal proceedings, 15
  - (c) providing other advice and assistance in relation to the prevention of disputes about legal rights or duties (“legal disputes”) or the settlement or other resolution of legal disputes, and
  - (d) providing advice and assistance in relation to the enforcement of decisions in legal proceedings or other decisions by which legal disputes are resolved. 20
- (2) The services described in subsection (1) include, in particular, advice and assistance in the form of—
- (a) representation, and
  - (b) mediation and other forms of dispute resolution. 25
- (3) In this Part “civil legal services” means any legal services other than the types of advice, assistance and representation that are required to be made available under sections 12, 14 and 15 (criminal legal aid).

**8 General cases**

- (1) Civil legal services are to be available to an individual under this Part if— 30
- (a) they are civil legal services described in Part 1 of Schedule 1, and
  - (b) the Director has determined that the individual qualifies for the services in accordance with this Part (and has not withdrawn the determination).
- (2) The Lord Chancellor may by order modify Schedule 1 by omitting services from Part 1 of the Schedule (whether by modifying that Part or Part 2, 3 or 4 of the Schedule). 35

**9 Exceptional cases**

- (1) Civil legal services other than services described in Part 1 of Schedule 1 are to be available to an individual under this Part if subsection (2) or (4) is satisfied. 40
- (2) This subsection is satisfied where the Director—

- 
- (a) has made an exceptional case determination in relation to the individual and the services, and
    - (b) has determined that the individual qualifies for the services in accordance with this Part,

(and has not withdrawn either determination). 5
  - (3) For the purposes of subsection (2), an exceptional case determination is a determination –
    - (a) that it is necessary to make the services available to the individual under this Part because failure to do so would be a breach of –
      - (i) the individual’s Convention rights (within the meaning of the Human Rights Act 1998), or 10
      - (ii) any rights of the individual to the provision of legal services that are enforceable EU rights, or
    - (b) that it is appropriate to do so, in the particular circumstances of the case, having regard to any risk that failure to do so would be such a breach. 15
  - (4) This subsection is satisfied where –
    - (a) the services consist of advocacy in proceedings at an inquest under the Coroners Act 1988 into the death of a member of the individual’s family, 20
    - (b) the Director has made a wider public interest determination in relation to the individual and the inquest, and
    - (c) the Director has determined that the individual qualifies for the services in accordance with this Part,

(and neither determination has been withdrawn). 25
  - (5) For the purposes of subsection (4), a wider public interest determination is a determination that, in the particular circumstances of the case, the provision of advocacy under this Part for the individual for the purposes of the inquest is likely to produce significant benefits for a class of person, other than the individual and the members of the individual’s family. 30
  - (6) For the purposes of this section an individual is a member of another individual’s family if –
    - (a) they are relatives (whether of the full blood or half blood or by marriage or civil partnership),
    - (b) they are cohabitants (as defined in Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996), or 35
    - (c) one has parental responsibility for the other.

## 10 Qualifying for civil legal aid

- (1) The Director must determine whether an individual qualifies under this Part for civil legal services in accordance with – 40
  - (a) section 20 (financial resources) and regulations under that section, and
  - (b) criteria set out in regulations made under this paragraph.
- (2) In setting the criteria, the Lord Chancellor –
  - (a) must consider the circumstances in which it is appropriate to make civil legal services available under this Part, and 45
  - (b) must, in particular, consider the extent to which the criteria ought to reflect the factors in subsection (3).

- (3) Those factors are –
- (a) the likely cost of providing the services and the benefit which may be obtained by the services being provided,
  - (b) the availability of resources to provide the services,
  - (c) the appropriateness of applying those resources to provide the services, having regard to present and likely future demands for the provision of civil legal services under this Part, 5
  - (d) the importance for the individual of the matters in relation to which the services would be provided,
  - (e) the nature and seriousness of the act, omission, circumstances or other matter in relation to which the services are sought, 10
  - (f) the availability to the individual of services provided other than under this Part and the likelihood of the individual being able to make use of such services,
  - (g) if the services are sought by the individual in relation to a dispute, the individual’s prospects of success in the dispute, 15
  - (h) the conduct of the individual in connection with services made available under this Part or an application for such services,
  - (i) the conduct of the individual in connection with any legal proceedings or other proceedings for resolving disputes about legal rights or duties, and 20
  - (j) the public interest.
- (4) In setting the criteria, the Lord Chancellor must seek to secure that, in cases in which there is more than one description of service that could be provided for an individual, the individual qualifies under this Part for the service which in all the circumstances is the most appropriate having regard to the criteria. 25
- (5) The criteria must reflect the principle that, in many disputes, mediation and other forms of dispute resolution are more appropriate than legal proceedings.
- (6) Regulations under subsection (1)(b) may provide that no criteria apply in relation to a prescribed description of individual or services. 30

## 11 Determinations

- (1) A determination by the Director that an individual qualifies under this Part for civil legal services must specify –
- (a) the type of services, and
  - (b) the matters in relation to which the services are to be available. 35
- (2) Regulations may make provision about the making and withdrawal of determinations under sections 8 and 9.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may, in particular, include –
- (a) provision about the form and content of determinations and applications for determinations, 40
  - (b) provision permitting or requiring applications and determinations to be made and withdrawn in writing, by telephone or by other prescribed means,
  - (c) provision setting time limits for applications and determinations,
  - (d) provision for a determination to be disregarded for the purposes of this Part if made in response to an application that is made otherwise than in accordance with the regulations, 45

- (e) provision about conditions which must be satisfied by an applicant before a determination is made,
  - (f) provision about the circumstances in which a determination may or must be withdrawn,
  - (g) provision requiring information and documents to be provided, 5
  - (h) provision requiring individuals who are the subject of a determination to be informed of the reasons for making or withdrawing the determination, and
  - (i) provision for giving information to individuals who do not qualify for civil legal services under this Part about alternative ways of obtaining or funding civil legal services. 10
- (4) The circumstances prescribed under subsection (3)(f) may, in particular, relate to whether the individual who is the subject of the determination has complied with requirements imposed by or under this Part.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (2) must make provision establishing procedures for the review of determinations under sections 8 and 9 and of the withdrawal of such determinations. 15
- (6) Regulations under subsection (2) may make provision for appeals to a court, tribunal or other person against such determinations and against the withdrawal of such determinations. 20

*Criminal legal aid*

**12 Advice and assistance for individuals in custody**

- (1) Initial advice and initial assistance are to be available under this Part to an individual who is arrested and held in custody at a police station or other premises if the Director has determined that the individual qualifies for such advice and assistance in accordance with this Part (and has not withdrawn the determination). 25
- (2) The Director must make a determination under this section having regard, in particular, to the interests of justice.
- (3) Regulations may require the Director to make a determination under this section in accordance with— 30
- (a) section 20 (financial resources) and regulations under that section, and
  - (b) criteria set out in the regulations.
- (4) A determination under this section must specify the type of advice or assistance (or both) to be available under this Part. 35
- (5) Regulations may make provision about the making and withdrawal of determinations under this section.
- (6) Regulations under subsection (5) may, in particular, include—
- (a) provision about the form and content of determinations and applications for determinations, 40
  - (b) provision permitting or requiring applications and determinations to be made and withdrawn in writing, by telephone or by other prescribed means,
  - (c) provision setting time limits for applications and determinations,



- (d) provision for a determination to be disregarded for the purposes of this Part if made in response to an application that is made otherwise than in accordance with the regulations,
  - (e) provision about conditions which must be satisfied by an applicant before a determination is made, 5
  - (f) provision about the circumstances in which a determination may or must be withdrawn,
  - (g) provision requiring information and documents to be provided, and
  - (h) provision requiring individuals who are the subject of a determination to be informed of the reasons for making or withdrawing the determination. 10
- (7) The circumstances prescribed under subsection (6)(f) may, in particular, relate to whether the individual who is the subject of the determination has complied with requirements imposed by or under this Part.
- (8) For the purposes of this section, in relation to an individual who is in custody – 15
- “initial advice” means advice as to how the law in relation to a matter relevant to the person’s arrest applies in particular circumstances and as to the steps that might be taken having regard to how it applies;
  - “initial assistance” means assistance in taking any of those steps which the individual might reasonably take while in custody. 20
- (9) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations provide that prescribed advice or assistance is not initial advice or initial assistance for the purposes of this section.

### 13 Criminal proceedings

- In this Part “criminal proceedings” means – 25
- (a) proceedings before a court for dealing with an individual accused of an offence,
  - (b) proceedings before a court for dealing with an individual convicted of an offence, including proceedings in respect of a sentence or order,
  - (c) proceedings for dealing with an individual under the Extradition Act 2003, 30
  - (d) proceedings for binding an individual over to keep the peace or to be of good behaviour under section 115 of the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 and for dealing with an individual who fails to comply with an order under that section, 35
  - (e) proceedings on an appeal brought by an individual under section 44A of the Criminal Appeal Act 1968 (appeal in case of death of appellant),
  - (f) proceedings on a reference under section 36 of the Criminal Justice Act 1972 on a point of law following the acquittal of an individual on indictment, 40
  - (g) proceedings for contempt committed, or alleged to have been committed, by an individual in the face of a court, and
  - (h) such other proceedings, before any court, tribunal or other person, as may be prescribed.

## **14 Advice and assistance for criminal proceedings**

- (1) Regulations may provide that prescribed advice and assistance is to be available under this Part to an individual described in subsection (2) if—
  - (a) prescribed conditions are met, and
  - (b) the Director has determined that the individual qualifies for such advice and assistance in accordance with the regulations (and has not withdrawn the determination). 5
- (2) Those individuals are—
  - (a) individuals who are involved in investigations which may lead to criminal proceedings (other than individuals arrested and held in custody at a police station or other premises), 10
  - (b) individuals who are before a court, tribunal or other person in criminal proceedings, and
  - (c) individuals who have been the subject of criminal proceedings.
- (3) When making the regulations, the Lord Chancellor must have regard, in particular, to the interests of justice. 15
- (4) The regulations must require the Director to make determinations under the regulations having regard, in particular, to the interests of justice.
- (5) The regulations may require the Director to make such determinations in accordance with— 20
  - (a) section 20 (financial resources) and regulations under that section, and
  - (b) criteria set out in the regulations.
- (6) The regulations may make provision about the making and withdrawal of determinations under the regulations.
- (7) The regulations may, in particular, include— 25
  - (a) provision about the form and content of determinations and applications for determinations,
  - (b) provision permitting or requiring applications and determinations to be made and withdrawn in writing, by telephone or by other prescribed means, 30
  - (c) provision setting time limits for applications and determinations,
  - (d) provision for a determination to be disregarded for the purposes of this Part if made in response to an application that is made otherwise than in accordance with the regulations,
  - (e) provision about conditions which must be satisfied by an applicant before a determination is made, 35
  - (f) provision about the circumstances in which a determination may or must be withdrawn,
  - (g) provision requiring information and documents to be provided, and
  - (h) provision requiring individuals who are the subject of a determination to be informed of the reasons for making or withdrawing the determination. 40
- (8) The circumstances prescribed under subsection (7)(f) may, in particular, relate to whether the individual who is the subject of the determination has complied with requirements imposed by or under this Part. 45
- (9) The regulations may provide for the review of, or appeals to a court, tribunal or other person against, a decision by the Director—

- (a) that the interests of justice do not require advice or assistance to be made available to an individual under the regulations, or
  - (b) that criteria prescribed under subsection (5)(b) are not met.
- (10) In this section “assistance” includes, in particular, assistance in the form of advocacy. 5

## 15 Representation for criminal proceedings

- (1) Representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings is to be available under this Part to an individual if –
- (a) the individual is a specified individual in relation to the proceedings, and 10
  - (b) the relevant authority has determined (provisionally or otherwise) that the individual qualifies for such representation in accordance with this Part (and has not withdrawn the determination).
- (2) Representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings is to be available under this Part to an individual if – 15
- (a) the proceedings involve the individual resisting an appeal to the Crown Court otherwise than in an official capacity, and
  - (b) the relevant authority has determined (provisionally or otherwise) that the individual qualifies for such representation in accordance with this Part (and has not withdrawn the determination). 20
- (3) Where an individual qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings (“the principal proceedings”), representation is also to be available to the individual for the purposes of –
- (a) any related bail proceedings, and
  - (b) any preliminary or incidental proceedings. 25
- (4) Regulations may –
- (a) make provision specifying whether proceedings are or are not to be regarded as preliminary or incidental for the purposes of subsection (3), and
  - (b) make provision for exceptions from subsection (3). 30
- (5) Regulations under subsection (4)(b) may, in particular, make exceptions for proceedings taking place more than a prescribed period of time before or after the principal proceedings.
- (6) In this section –
- “the relevant authority”, in relation to a specified individual and criminal proceedings, means the person who is authorised by or under section 17, 18 or 19 to determine (provisionally or otherwise) whether the individual qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of the proceedings; 35
  - “specified individual” means – 40
    - (a) in relation to criminal proceedings mentioned in any of paragraphs (a) to (g) of section 13, an individual mentioned in that paragraph in relation to those proceedings, and
    - (b) in relation to criminal proceedings prescribed by regulations under section 13(h), a description of individual specified in the regulations in relation to those proceedings. 45

## **16 Qualifying for representation**

- (1) The relevant authority must determine whether an individual qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings (whether provisionally or otherwise) in accordance with—
  - (a) section 20 (financial resources) and regulations under that section, and 5
  - (b) the interests of justice.
- (2) In deciding what the interests of justice consist of for the purposes of such a determination, the following factors must be taken into account—
  - (a) whether, if any matter arising in the proceedings is decided against the individual, the individual would be likely to lose his or her liberty or livelihood or to suffer serious damage to his or her reputation, 10
  - (b) whether the determination of any matter arising in the proceedings may involve consideration of a substantial question of law,
  - (c) whether the individual may be unable to understand the proceedings or to state his or her own case, 15
  - (d) whether the proceedings may involve the tracing, interviewing or expert cross-examination of witnesses on behalf of the individual, and
  - (e) whether it is in the interests of another person that the individual be represented.
- (3) The Lord Chancellor may by order amend subsection (2) by adding or varying a factor. 20
- (4) Regulations may prescribe circumstances in which making representation available to an individual for the purposes of criminal proceedings is to be taken to be in the interests of justice for the purposes of a determination under section 15. 25
- (5) In this section “the relevant authority”, in relation to an individual and criminal proceedings, means the person who is authorised by or under section 17, 18 or 19 to determine (provisionally or otherwise) whether the individual qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of the proceedings.

## **17 Determinations by Director**

- (1) The Director is authorised to determine whether an individual qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings, except in circumstances in which a court is authorised to make the determination under regulations under section 18. 30
- (2) A determination by the Director under section 15 must specify the criminal proceedings. 35
- (3) Regulations may make provision about the making and withdrawal of determinations by the Director under that section.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) may, in particular, include—
  - (a) provision about the form and content of determinations and applications for determinations, 40
  - (b) provision permitting or requiring applications and determinations to be made and withdrawn in writing, by telephone or by other prescribed means,
  - (c) provision setting time limits for applications and determinations, 45

- 
- (d) provision for a determination to be disregarded for the purposes of this Part if made in response to an application that is made otherwise than in accordance with the regulations,
  - (e) provision about conditions which must be satisfied by an applicant before a determination is made, 5
  - (f) provision about the circumstances in which a determination may or must be withdrawn,
  - (g) provision requiring information and documents to be provided,
  - (h) provision requiring individuals who are the subject of a determination to be informed of the reasons for making or withdrawing the determination, and 10
  - (i) provision for the review of a decision by the Director that the interests of justice do not require representation to be made available, or to continue to be made available, to an individual under this Part for the purposes of criminal proceedings. 15
- (5) The circumstances prescribed under subsection (4)(f) may, in particular, relate to whether the individual who is the subject of the determination has complied with requirements imposed by or under this Part.
- (6) An appeal lies to such court, tribunal or other person as may be prescribed against a decision by the Director that the interests of justice do not require representation to be made available, or to continue to be made available, to an individual under this Part for the purposes of criminal proceedings, subject to subsection (7). 20
- (7) Regulations may provide for exceptions from subsection (6).
- (8) This section does not authorise the Director to make a provisional determination and accordingly – 25
- (a) references in this section to a determination do not include a provisional determination, and
  - (b) references in this section to a decision do not include a decision made as part of such a determination. 30
- 18 Determinations by court**
- (1) Regulations may –
- (a) provide that a court before which criminal proceedings take place, or are to take place, is authorised to determine whether an individual qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings of a prescribed description, and 35
  - (b) make provision about the making and withdrawal of such determinations by a court.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, include – 40
- (a) provision about the form and content of determinations and applications for determinations,
  - (b) provision permitting or requiring applications and determinations to be made and withdrawn in writing, by telephone or by other prescribed means,
  - (c) provision setting time limits for applications and determinations, 45

- 
- (d) provision enabling a court to determine that an individual qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings before another court,
  - (e) provision for the powers of a magistrates' court of any area under the regulations to be exercised by a single justice of the peace for the area, and 5
  - (f) provision about the circumstances in which a determination may or must be withdrawn.
  - (3) The circumstances prescribed under subsection (2)(f) may, in particular, relate to whether the individual who is the subject of the determination has complied with requirements imposed by or under this Part. 10
  - (4) The regulations must provide that, subject to prescribed exceptions, an appeal lies to such court, tribunal or other person as may be prescribed against a decision by a court that the interests of justice do not require representation to be made available, or to continue to be made available, to an individual under this Part for the purposes of criminal proceedings. 15
  - (5) The regulations may include consequential provision modifying an Act or instrument.
  - (6) Regulations under this section may not authorise a court to make a provisional determination and accordingly – 20
    - (a) references in this section to a determination do not include a provisional determination, and
    - (b) references in this section to a decision do not include a decision made as part of such a determination.
  - 19 Provisional determinations** 25
  - (1) Regulations may provide that the Director or a court may make a provisional determination that an individual qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings where –
    - (a) the individual is involved in an investigation which may result in criminal proceedings, 30
    - (b) the determination is made for the purposes of criminal proceedings that may result from the investigation, and
    - (c) any prescribed conditions are met.
  - (2) The regulations may, in particular, include – 35
    - (a) provision about the stage in an investigation at which a provisional determination may be made,
    - (b) provision about the making and withdrawal of provisional determinations, including provision equivalent to that described in section 17(4)(a) to (i) and (5),
    - (c) provision about the circumstances in which a provisional determination is to cease to be provisional, and 40
    - (d) provision about the circumstances in which a provisional determination is to be treated as if it were a determination made by the Director or a court in reliance on section 17 or 18.
  - (3) In this Part, as it applies in connection with a provisional determination made under regulations under this section as to whether an individual qualifies for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings, references to 45

proceedings include criminal proceedings that may result from the investigation concerned.

*Financial resources*

**20 Financial resources**

- (1) A person may not make a relevant determination that an individual qualifies under this Part for services unless the person has determined that the individual’s financial resources are such that the individual is eligible for the services (and has not withdrawn the determination). 5
- (2) Regulations may –
  - (a) make provision about when an individual’s financial resources are such that the individual is eligible under this Part for services, and 10
  - (b) make provision for exceptions from subsection (1).
- (3) Regulations may provide that an individual is to be treated, for the purposes of regulations under subsection (2), as having or not having financial resources of a prescribed description. 15
- (4) The regulations may, in particular, provide that the individual is to be treated as having prescribed financial resources of a person of a prescribed description.
- (5) Regulations may make provision about the making and withdrawal of determinations under this section. 20
- (6) Regulations under subsection (5) may, in particular, include –
  - (a) provision about the form and content of determinations,
  - (b) provision permitting or requiring determinations to be made and withdrawn in writing, by telephone or by other prescribed means,
  - (c) provision setting time limits for determinations, 25
  - (d) provision about conditions which must be satisfied before a determination is made,
  - (e) provision about the circumstances in which a determination may or must be withdrawn,
  - (f) provision requiring information and documents to be provided, 30
  - (g) provision requiring individuals who are the subject of a determination to be informed of the reasons for making or withdrawing the determination, and
  - (h) provision for the review of a determination in respect of an individual’s financial resources. 35
- (7) The circumstances prescribed under subsection (6)(e) may, in particular, relate to whether the individual who is the subject of the determination has complied with requirements imposed by or under this Part.
- (8) In this section “relevant determination” means a determination that is required to be carried out in accordance with this section by – 40
  - (a) section 10 or 16, or
  - (b) regulations under section 12 or 14 or paragraph 4 of Schedule 3.

**21 Information about financial resources**

- (1) The relevant authority may make an information request to –
- (a) the Secretary of State,
  - (b) a relevant Northern Ireland Department, or
  - (c) the Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs (“the Commissioners”). 5
- (2) An information request may be made only for the purposes of facilitating a determination about an individual’s financial resources for the purposes of this Part.
- (3) An information request made to the Secretary of State or a relevant Northern Ireland Department under this section may request the disclosure of some or all of the following information – 10
- (a) a relevant individual’s full name and any previous names;
  - (b) a relevant individual’s address and any previous addresses;
  - (c) a relevant individual’s date of birth; 15
  - (d) a relevant individual’s national insurance number;
  - (e) a relevant individual’s benefit status at a time specified in the request;
  - (f) information of a prescribed description.
- (4) An information request made to the Commissioners under this section may request the disclosure of some or all of the following information – 20
- (a) whether or not a relevant individual is employed or was employed at a time specified in the request;
  - (b) the name and address of the employer;
  - (c) whether or not a relevant individual is carrying on a business, trade or profession or was doing so at a time specified in the request; 25
  - (d) the name under which it is or was carried on;
  - (e) the address of any premises used for the purposes of carrying it on;
  - (f) a relevant individual’s national insurance number;
  - (g) a relevant individual’s benefit status at a time specified in the request;
  - (h) information of a prescribed description. 30
- (5) The information that may be prescribed under subsections (3)(f) and (4)(h) includes, in particular, information relating to –
- (a) prescribed income of a relevant individual for a prescribed period, and
  - (b) prescribed capital of a relevant individual.
- (6) Information may not be prescribed under subsection (4)(h) without the Commissioners’ consent. 35
- (7) The Secretary of State, the relevant Northern Ireland Departments and the Commissioners may disclose to the relevant authority information specified in an information request made under this section.
- (8) In this section – 40
- “benefit status”, in relation to an individual, means whether or not the individual is in receipt of a prescribed benefit or benefits and, if so –
- (a) which benefit or benefits the individual is receiving,
  - (b) whether the individual is entitled to the benefit or benefits alone or jointly, 45



- (c) in prescribed cases, the amount the individual is receiving by way of the benefit (or each of the benefits) (“the benefit amount”), and
  - (d) in prescribed cases, where the benefit consists of a number of elements, what those elements are and the amount included in respect of each element in calculating the benefit amount; 5
- “the relevant authority” means –
- (a) a prescribed person, or
  - (b) in relation to circumstances for which no person is prescribed, the Director; 10
- “a relevant individual”, in relation to an information request for the purposes of a determination about an individual’s financial resources, means –
- (a) that individual, and
  - (b) any other individual whose financial resources are or may be relevant for the purposes of the determination; 15
- “relevant Northern Ireland Department” means the Department for Social Development in Northern Ireland or the Department of Finance and Personnel in Northern Ireland.

*Contributions and costs* 20

**22 Payment for services**

- (1) An individual for whom services are made available under this Part is not to be required to make a payment in connection with the provision of the services, except where regulations provide otherwise.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, provide that in prescribed circumstances an individual must do one or more of the following – 25
  - (a) pay the cost of the services;
  - (b) pay a contribution in respect of the cost of the services of a prescribed amount;
  - (c) pay a prescribed amount in respect of administration costs. 30
- (3) The regulations may, in particular, provide that where –
  - (a) civil legal services are provided to an individual under this Part in relation to a dispute, and
  - (b) prescribed conditions are met,the individual must pay a prescribed amount which may exceed the cost of the civil legal services provided. 35
- (4) The regulations may, in particular, make provision about the determination of the cost of services for the purposes of the regulations.
- (5) The regulations may, in particular –
  - (a) provide for an individual’s liability under the regulations to make a payment to change or cease in prescribed circumstances, 40
  - (b) provide for an individual’s liability under the regulations to arise on a determination by a prescribed person,
  - (c) provide for such a determination to be varied or withdrawn by a prescribed person, and 45

- 
- (d) provide for the review of such a determination in respect of an individual's liability to make a payment.
- (6) The regulations may, in particular, provide that an individual is to be treated, for the purposes of the regulations, as having or not having financial resources of a prescribed description. 5
- (7) Regulations under subsection (6) may, in particular, provide that the individual is to be treated as having prescribed financial resources of a person of a prescribed description.
- (8) The regulations may, in particular, include provision for an amount to be payable entirely or partly – 10
- (a) by periodical payments;
  - (b) by one or more lump sums;
  - (c) out of income;
  - (d) out of capital.
- (9) The regulations may, in particular, include – 15
- (a) provision requiring information and documents to be provided,
  - (b) provision about the time and manner in which payments must be made,
  - (c) provision about the person to whom payments must be made, and
  - (d) provision about what that person must do with the payments. 20
- (10) The regulations may, in particular, make provision for the payment by an individual of interest, on such terms as may be prescribed, in respect of – 25
- (a) a loan made to the individual under this Part,
  - (b) a payment in connection with the provision of services which is not required by the regulations to be made by the individual until after the time when the services are provided, and
  - (c) so much of a payment as remains unpaid after the time when it is required by the regulations to be made by the individual.
- (11) The regulations – 30
- (a) must make provision for the repayment to an individual of any amount in excess of the individual's liability under the regulations or under section 23, and
  - (b) may make provision for the payment of interest on the excess.
- (12) In this section – 35
- “administration costs” means costs in connection with the administration of legal aid, including the administration of charges arising under section 24;
  - “prescribed amount” includes an amount calculated in a prescribed manner.
- 23 Enforcement** 40
- (1) Regulations may make provision about the enforcement of an obligation to make a payment imposed under section 22.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision for costs incurred in connection with the enforcement of an individual's obligation to make a payment to be recovered from the individual. 45

- (3) Regulations under this section may, in particular –
  - (a) provide that overdue amounts are recoverable summarily as a civil debt;
  - (b) provide that overdue amounts are recoverable as if they were payable under an order of the High Court or a county court, if the court in question so orders on the application of the person to whom the amounts are due. 5
- (4) Regulations under this section may include provision requiring information and documents to be provided.
- (5) Schedule 2 (criminal legal aid: motor vehicle orders) has effect. 10

## **24 Charges on property in connection with civil legal services**

- (1) Where civil legal services are made available for an individual under this Part, the amounts described in subsection (2) are to constitute a first charge on –
  - (a) any property recovered or preserved by the individual in proceedings, or in any compromise or settlement of a dispute, in connection with which the services were provided (whether the property is recovered or preserved for the individual or another person), and 15
  - (b) any costs payable to the individual by another person in connection with such proceedings or such a dispute.
- (2) Those amounts are – 20
  - (a) amounts expended by the Lord Chancellor in securing the provision of the services (except to the extent that they are recovered by other means), and
  - (b) other amounts payable by the individual in connection with the services under section 22 or 23. 25
- (3) Regulations may make provision for exceptions from subsection (1).
- (4) Regulations may make provision about the charge under subsection (1) including, in particular –
  - (a) provision as to whether the charge is in favour of the Lord Chancellor or a person by whom the services were made available, and 30
  - (b) provision about its enforcement.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (4)(b) may, in particular, include –
  - (a) provision requiring amounts recovered by the individual in proceedings or as part of a compromise or settlement of a dispute, and costs payable to the individual, to be paid to the Lord Chancellor or a person by whom the services were made available, 35
  - (b) provision about the time and manner in which the amounts must be paid,
  - (c) provision about what the Lord Chancellor or the person by whom the services were made available must do with the amounts, 40
  - (d) provision for the payment of interest on all or part of the amounts,
  - (e) provision for the payment to the individual concerned of any amount in excess of the amounts described in subsection (2), and
  - (f) provision for the enforcement of requirements described in paragraph (a). 45

- (6) Regulations under this section may include provision requiring information and documents to be provided.

## 25 Costs in civil proceedings

- (1) Costs ordered against an individual in relevant civil proceedings must not exceed the amount (if any) which it is reasonable for the individual to pay having regard to all the circumstances, including – 5
- (a) the financial resources of all of the parties to the proceedings, and
  - (b) their conduct in connection with the dispute to which the proceedings relate.
- (2) In subsection (1) “relevant civil proceedings”, in relation to an individual, means – 10
- (a) proceedings for the purposes of which civil legal services are made available for the individual under this Part, or
  - (b) if such services are made available for the individual under this Part for the purposes of only part of proceedings, that part of the proceedings. 15
- (3) Regulations may make provision for exceptions from subsection (1).
- (4) In assessing for the purposes of subsection (1) the financial resources of an individual for whom civil legal services are made available, the following must not be taken into account, except so far as prescribed – 20
- (a) the individual’s clothes and household furniture, and
  - (b) the implements of the individual’s trade.
- (5) Subject to subsections (1) to (4), regulations may make provision about costs in relation to proceedings for the purposes of which civil legal services are made available under this Part.
- (6) Regulations under subsection (5) may, in particular, make provision – 25
- (a) specifying the principles to be applied in determining the amount of any costs which may be awarded against a party for whom civil legal services are made available under this Part,
  - (b) limiting the circumstances in which, or the extent to which, an order for costs may be enforced against such a party, 30
  - (c) as to the cases in which, and the extent to which, such a party may be required to give security for costs and the manner in which it is to be given,
  - (d) requiring the payment by the Lord Chancellor of the whole or part of any costs incurred by a party for whom civil legal services are not made available under this Part, 35
  - (e) specifying the principles to be applied in determining the amount of costs which may be awarded to a party for whom civil legal services are made available under this Part,
  - (f) as to the court, tribunal or other person by whom the amount of any costs is to be determined, and 40
  - (g) as to the extent to which any determination of that amount is to be final.
- (7) Regulations under this section may include provision requiring information and documents to be provided.

*Providers of services etc*

**26 Choice of provider of services etc**

- (1) The Lord Chancellor’s duty under section 1(1) does not include a duty to secure that, where services are made available to an individual under this Part, they are made available by the means selected by the individual. 5
- (2) The Lord Chancellor may discharge that duty, in particular, by arranging for the services to be provided by telephone or by other electronic means.
- (3) The Lord Chancellor’s duty under section 1(1) does not include a duty to secure that, where services are made available to an individual under this Part, they are made available by a person selected by the individual, subject to subsections (4) to (10). 10
- (4) An individual who qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings by virtue of a determination under section 15 may select any representative or representatives willing to act for the individual, subject to regulations under subsection (6). 15
- (5) Where an individual exercises that right, representation by the selected representative or representatives is to be available under this Part for the purposes of the proceedings.
- (6) Regulations may provide that in prescribed circumstances –
  - (a) the right conferred by subsection (4) is not to apply in cases of prescribed descriptions, 20
  - (b) an individual who has been provided with advice or assistance in accordance with section 12 or regulations under section 14 by a person selected by the individual is to be taken to have selected that person under subsection (4), 25
  - (c) the right conferred by subsection (4) is not to include a right to select a representative of a prescribed description,
  - (d) that right is to select only a representative located in a prescribed area or of a prescribed description,
  - (e) that right is to select not more than a prescribed number of representatives to act at any one time, and 30
  - (f) that right is not to include a right to select a representative in place of a representative previously selected.
- (7) Regulations under subsection (6)(b) may prescribe circumstances in which an individual is to be taken to have selected a person to provide advice or assistance. 35
- (8) Regulations may provide that in prescribed circumstances the Lord Chancellor is not required to make available representation for an individual by a prescribed representative.
- (9) Provision made under subsection (8) does not prejudice any right of the individual to select another representative. 40
- (10) The circumstances which may be prescribed under this section include that a determination has been made by a prescribed person.

## **27 Position of providers of services**

- (1) The fact that services provided for an individual are or could be provided under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part does not affect –
- (a) the relationship between the individual and the person by whom the services are provided, 5
  - (b) any privilege arising out of that relationship, or
  - (c) any right which the individual may have to be indemnified by another person in respect of expenses incurred by the individual,
- except to the extent that regulations provide otherwise.
- (2) A person who provides services under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part must not take any payment in respect of the services apart from – 10
- (a) payment made in accordance with the arrangements, and
  - (b) payment authorised by the Lord Chancellor to be taken.
- (3) Regulations may provide that the withdrawal of a determination that an individual qualifies for prescribed services under this Part does not affect the right of any person who has provided such services to the individual under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part to remuneration for work done before the date of the withdrawal. 15

## **28 Code of conduct**

- (1) The Lord Chancellor must publish a code of conduct to be observed by the following persons when providing services to an individual under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part – 20
- (a) civil servants, and
  - (b) employees of a body established and maintained by the Lord Chancellor. 25
- (2) The code must include –
- (a) duties to avoid discrimination,
  - (b) duties to protect the interests of the individuals for whom services are provided,
  - (c) duties to courts and tribunals, 30
  - (d) duties to avoid conflicts of interest,
  - (e) duties of confidentiality, and
  - (f) duties on persons who are members of a professional body to comply with the rules of the body.
- (3) The Lord Chancellor must lay the code, and any revision of the code, before Parliament. 35
- (4) The persons described in subsection (1)(a) and (b) are not subject to the direction of the Lord Chancellor when providing services to an individual under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part.

## **29 Position of other parties, courts and tribunals**

- (1) Except as expressly provided by regulations, any rights conferred by or under this Part on an individual for whom services are provided under this Part for the purposes of proceedings do not affect – 40
- (a) the rights or liabilities of other parties to the proceedings, or

- (b) the principles on which the discretion of a court or tribunal is normally exercised.
- (2) Regulations may make provision about the procedure of a court or tribunal in relation to services made available under this Part.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may, in particular, authorise the exercise of the functions of a court or tribunal by –
  - (a) a member or officer of that court or tribunal, or
  - (b) another court or tribunal.

### *Supplementary*

## **30 Legal aid for legal persons** 10

Schedule 3 (legal aid for legal persons) has effect.

## **31 Foreign law**

- (1) The civil legal services described in Part 1 of Schedule 1 do not include services relating to any law other than the law of England and Wales, except –
  - (a) where express provision to the contrary is made by or under Part 1 of Schedule 1; 15
  - (b) where such law is relevant for determining any issue relating to the law of England and Wales;
  - (c) in other circumstances specified by the Lord Chancellor by order.
- (2) A determination by the Director or a court under section 12, 14 or 15 that an individual qualifies for advice, assistance or representation under this Part does not impose a duty on the Lord Chancellor to secure that services relating to any law other than the law of England and Wales are made available, except –
  - (a) where such law is relevant for determining any issue relating to the law of England and Wales; 20
  - (b) in other circumstances specified by the Lord Chancellor by order. 25
- (3) The Lord Chancellor may not make an order under subsection (1) or (2) unless the Lord Chancellor considers –
  - (a) that it is necessary to make the order because failure to do so would result in a breach of –
    - (i) an individual’s Convention rights (within the meaning of the Human Rights Act 1998), or
    - (ii) any rights of an individual to the provision of legal services that are enforceable EU rights, or 30
  - (b) that it is appropriate to make the order having regard to any risk that failure to do so would result in such a breach. 35

## **32 Restriction on disclosure of information about financial resources**

- (1) A person to whom information is disclosed under section 21 or this subsection may disclose the information to any person to whom its disclosure is necessary or expedient in connection with facilitating a determination in respect of an individual’s financial resources that is required under section 20. 40

- 
- (2) A person to whom such information is disclosed must not –
- (a) disclose the information other than in accordance with subsection (1), or
  - (b) use the information other than for the purpose of facilitating a determination described in subsection (1). 5
- (3) Subsection (2) does not prevent –
- (a) the disclosure of information in accordance with an enactment or an order of a court,
  - (b) the disclosure of information for the purposes of the investigation or prosecution of an offence (or suspected offence) under the law of England and Wales or Northern Ireland or any other jurisdiction, except where regulations otherwise provide, 10
  - (c) the disclosure of information for the purposes of instituting, or otherwise for the purposes of, proceedings before a court, or
  - (d) the disclosure of information which has previously been lawfully disclosed to the public. 15
- (4) A person who discloses or uses information in contravention of this section is guilty of an offence and liable –
- (a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 2 years or a fine (or both); 20
  - (b) on summary conviction –
    - (i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both), and
    - (ii) in Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 6 months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both). 25
- (5) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under this section to prove that the person reasonably believed that the disclosure or use was lawful.
- (6) In this section “enactment” includes – 30
- (a) an enactment contained in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978), and
  - (b) an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under, an Act or Measure of the National Assembly for Wales or Northern Ireland legislation. 35
- (7) In relation to an offence under this section committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003, the reference in subsection (4)(b)(i) to 12 months has effect as if it were a reference to 6 months.
- 33 Restriction on disclosure of other information 40**
- (1) This section applies to information that is provided –
- (a) to the Lord Chancellor, the Director, a court, a tribunal or any other person on whom functions are imposed or conferred by or under this Part, and
  - (b) in connection with the case of an individual seeking or receiving services provided under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part. 45



- 
- (2) Such information must not be disclosed, subject to the exceptions in section 34.
- (3) A person who discloses information in contravention of this section is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.
- (4) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under this section to prove that the person reasonably believed that the disclosure was lawful. 5
- (5) Proceedings for an offence under this section may not be brought without the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions.
- (6) Nothing in this section applies to information if – 10
- (a) it is provided to a person providing services under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part, and
  - (b) it is provided by or on behalf of an individual seeking or receiving the services.
- (7) Nothing in this section applies to information to which section 32 applies.
- 34 Exceptions from restriction under section 33 15**
- (1) Section 33(2) does not prevent the disclosure of information –
- (a) for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Lord Chancellor or the Secretary of State for Justice to carry out their functions (whether conferred or imposed by an Act or otherwise),
  - (b) for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Director to carry out functions imposed or conferred on the Director by or under this Part, or 20
  - (c) for the purpose of enabling or assisting a court, tribunal or other person on whom functions are imposed or conferred by or under this Part to carry out those functions.
- (2) Section 33(2) does not prevent – 25
- (a) the disclosure of information in accordance with the law of England and Wales or an order of a court,
  - (b) the disclosure of information for the purposes of the investigation or prosecution of an offence (or suspected offence) under the law of England and Wales or any other jurisdiction, except where regulations otherwise provide, 30
  - (c) the disclosure of information for the purposes of instituting, or otherwise for the purposes of, proceedings before a court,
  - (d) the disclosure of information which has previously been lawfully disclosed to the public, or 35
  - (e) the disclosure of information for the purpose of facilitating the proper performance by a tribunal of disciplinary functions.
- (3) Section 33(2) does not prevent the disclosure of –
- (a) information in the form of a summary or collection of information that is framed so that information relating to an individual cannot be ascertained from it, or 40
  - (b) information about the amount of any grant, loan or other payment made to a person by the Lord Chancellor under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part.
- (4) Section 33(2) does not prevent the disclosure of information for any purpose – 45

- 
- (a) with the consent of the individual in connection with whose case it was provided, and
  - (b) if the information was provided other than by that individual, with the consent of the person who provided the information.
- (5) Section 33(2) does not prevent the disclosure of information after the end of the restricted period if – 5
- (a) the disclosure is by a person who is a public authority for the purposes of the Freedom of Information Act 2000 or who is acting on behalf of such a person, and
  - (b) the information is not held by the public authority on behalf of another person. 10
- (6) The restricted period is the period of 100 years beginning with the end of the calendar year in which a record containing the information was first created by a person to whom the information was provided in connection with a case described in section 33(1)(b). 15
- 35 Misrepresentation**
- (1) This section applies where a person –
- (a) intentionally fails to comply with a requirement imposed by or under this Part to provide documents or information, or
  - (b) in providing documents or information in accordance with such a requirement, makes a statement or representation knowing or believing it to be false. 20
- (2) The person is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.
- (3) Proceedings in respect of an offence under this section may (despite anything in the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980) be brought at any time within the period of 6 months beginning with the date on which evidence sufficient in the opinion of the prosecutor to justify a prosecution comes to the prosecutor’s knowledge. 25
- (4) Subsection (3) does not authorise the commencement of proceedings for an offence more than 2 years after the date on which the offence was committed. 30
- (5) A county court is to have jurisdiction to hear and determine an action brought by the Lord Chancellor to recover loss sustained by reason of –
- (a) the failure by a person to comply with a requirement imposed by or under this Part to provide documents or information, or 35
  - (b) a false statement or false representation made by a person in providing documents or information in accordance with such a requirement.
- 36 Status of Director and Lord Chancellor**
- (1) The Director is to carry out the functions of the office on behalf of the Crown.
- (2) Service as the Director is service in the civil service of the State. 40
- (3) The Lord Chancellor is to be treated as a corporation sole –
- (a) for all purposes relating to the acquisition, holding, management and disposal of property and interests in property under this Part, and

- 
- (b) for all other purposes relating to the Lord Chancellor’s functions in connection with legal aid and other functions under this Part.
- (4) An instrument in connection with the acquisition, holding, management or disposal by the Lord Chancellor of property or an interest in property under this Part or for a purpose mentioned in subsection (3)(b) may be executed on the Lord Chancellor’s behalf by a person authorised by the Lord Chancellor for that purpose. 5
- (5) Any such instrument purporting to have been executed by the Lord Chancellor or on the Lord Chancellor’s behalf is to be received in evidence and, unless the contrary is proved, to be treated as having been so executed. 10
- 37 Abolition of Legal Services Commission**
- (1) The Legal Services Commission ceases to exist.
- (2) Schedule 4 (transfer of employees and property etc of Legal Services Commission) has effect.
- (3) The Lord Chancellor must, as soon as practicable after subsection (1) comes into force – 15
- (a) prepare a report on how the Legal Services Commission has carried out its functions in the final period,
- (b) lay a copy of the report before Parliament, and
- (c) once it has been laid, publish the report. 20
- (4) The Lord Chancellor must, as soon as practicable after subsection (1) comes into force –
- (a) prepare a statement of accounts for the Legal Services Commission for the final period, and
- (b) send a copy of the statement to the Comptroller and Auditor General. 25
- (5) The Comptroller and Auditor General must –
- (a) examine, certify and report on the statement, and
- (b) arrange for a copy of the statement and the report to be laid before Parliament.
- (6) In this section – 30
- “the final period” means the period –
- (a) beginning with end of the last financial year for which the Legal Services Commission produced a report and accounts in accordance with paragraphs 14 and 16 of Schedule 1 to the Access to Justice Act 1999, and 35
- (b) ending immediately before the day on which subsection (1) comes into force;
- “financial year” means a period of 12 months ending with 31 March.
- 38 Consequential amendments**
- Schedule 5 (legal aid: consequential amendments) has effect. 40
- 39 Northern Ireland: information about financial resources**
- Schedule 6 (Northern Ireland: information about financial resources) has effect.

#### 40 Orders, regulations and directions

- (1) Orders, regulations and directions under this Part –
- (a) may make different provision for different cases, circumstances or areas,
  - (b) may make provision generally or only for specified cases, circumstances or areas, and 5
  - (c) may make provision having effect for a specified period.
- (2) They may, in particular, make provision by reference to –
- (a) services provided for the purposes of proceedings before a particular court, tribunal or other person, 10
  - (b) services provided for a particular class of individual, or
  - (c) services provided for individuals selected by reference to particular criteria or on a sampling basis.
- (3) Orders and regulations under this Part –
- (a) may provide for a person to exercise a discretion in dealing with any matter, 15
  - (b) may make provision by reference to a document produced by any person, and
  - (c) may make consequential, incidental, supplementary, transitional or saving provision. 20
- (4) Orders and regulations under this Part are to be made by statutory instrument.
- (5) A statutory instrument containing an order or regulations under this Part is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament, subject to subsection (6).
- (6) A statutory instrument containing an order or regulations listed in subsection (7) (whether alone or with other provision) may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament. 25
- (7) Those orders and regulations are –
- (a) orders under section 8; 30
  - (b) orders under section 16(3);
  - (c) regulations under section 17(7);
  - (d) regulations under section 18;
  - (e) regulations under section 19;
  - (f) regulations under section 21; 35
  - (g) regulations under section 25(3) or (6)(b) or (d);
  - (h) regulations under section 26(6)(a) or (8);
  - (i) regulations under paragraph 5(9) of Schedule 3;
  - (j) regulations under paragraph 11 of Schedule 4 that amend or repeal a provision of an Act (as defined in that Schedule). 40

#### 41 Interpretation

- (1) In this Part –
- “advocacy” means the exercise of a right of audience before a court, tribunal or other person;
  - “civil legal services” has the meaning given in section 7; 45

“civil servant” means an individual employed in the civil service of the State;	
“criminal proceedings” has the meaning given in section 13;	
“the Director” means the Director of Legal Aid Casework;	
“functions” includes powers and duties;	5
“legal aid” has the meaning given in section 1;	
“legal proceedings” means proceedings before a court or tribunal;	
“legal services” has the meaning given in section 7;	
“modify”, in relation to an Act or instrument, includes amend, repeal or revoke and related terms are to be interpreted accordingly;	10
“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations (except in Schedule 6) and related terms are to be interpreted accordingly;	
“regulations” means regulations made by the Lord Chancellor (except in Schedule 6);	
“remuneration” includes disbursements;	15
“representation” means representation for the purposes of proceedings and includes –	
(a) the advice and assistance which is usually given by a representative in the steps preliminary or incidental to proceedings, and	20
(b) subject to any time limits which may be prescribed, advice and assistance as to any appeal.	
(2) In this Part references to proceedings are to be interpreted in accordance with section 19(3).	
<b>42 Crown application</b>	25
This Part binds the Crown.	

## PART 2

### LITIGATION FUNDING AND COSTS

#### *Payments for legal services in civil cases*

<b>43 Conditional fee agreements: success fees</b>	30
(1) In section 58 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (conditional fee agreements), in subsection (2) –	
(a) omit “and” after paragraph (a), and	
(b) after paragraph (b) insert “and	
(c) references to a success fee, in relation to a conditional fee agreement, are to the amount of the increase.”	35
(2) After subsection (4) of that section insert –	
“(4A) The additional conditions are applicable to a conditional fee agreement which –	
(a) provides for a success fee, and	40
(b) relates to proceedings of a description specified by order made by the Lord Chancellor for the purposes of this subsection.	

- 
- (4B) The additional conditions are that—
- (a) the agreement must provide that the success fee is subject to a maximum limit,
  - (b) the maximum limit must be expressed as a percentage of the descriptions of damages awarded in the proceedings that are specified in the agreement, 5
  - (c) that percentage must not exceed the percentage specified by order made by the Lord Chancellor in relation to the proceedings or calculated in a manner so specified, and
  - (d) those descriptions of damages may only include descriptions of damages specified by order made by the Lord Chancellor in relation to the proceedings.” 10
- (3) In section 58A of that Act (conditional fee agreements: supplementary), in subsection (5) after “section 58(4)” insert “, (4A) or (4B)”.
- (4) For subsection (6) of that section substitute— 15
- “(6) A costs order made in proceedings may not include provision requiring the payment by one party of all or part of a success fee payable by another party under a conditional fee agreement.”
- (5) In section 120(4) of that Act (regulations and orders subject to parliamentary approval) after “58(4),” insert “(4A) or (4B),” 20
- (6) The amendment made by subsection (4) does not apply in relation to a success fee payable under a conditional fee agreement entered into before that subsection comes into force.
- 44 Damages-based agreements**
- (1) Section 58AA of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (damages-based agreements) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In subsection (1) omit “relates to an employment matter and”.
- (3) In subsection (2) —
- (a) after “But” insert “(subject to subsection (9))”, and
  - (b) omit “relates to an employment matter and”. 30
- (4) Omit subsection (3)(b).
- (5) After subsection (4)(a) insert—
- “(aa) must not relate to proceedings which by virtue of section 58A(1) and (2) cannot be the subject of an enforceable conditional fee agreement or to proceedings of a description prescribed by the Lord Chancellor;” 35
- (6) In subsection (4)(b), at the beginning insert “if regulations so provide,”.
- (7) In subsection (4)(d) for “has provided prescribed information” substitute “has complied with such requirements (if any) as may be prescribed as to the provision of information”. 40
- (8) After subsection (6) insert—
- “(6A) Rules of court may make provision with respect to the assessment of costs in proceedings where a party in whose favour a costs order is

made has entered into a damages-based agreement in connection with the proceedings.”

(9) After subsection (7) insert –

“(7A) In this section (and in the definitions of “advocacy services” and “litigation services” as they apply for the purposes of this section) “proceedings” includes any sort of proceedings for resolving disputes (and not just proceedings in a court), whether commenced or contemplated.” 5

(10) After subsection (8) insert –

“(9) Where section 57 of the Solicitors Act 1974 (non-contentious business agreements between solicitor and client) applies to a damages-based agreement other than one relating to an employment matter, subsections (1) and (2) of this section do not make it unenforceable. 10

(10) For the purposes of subsection (9) a damages-based agreement relates to an employment matter if the matter in relation to which the services are provided is a matter that is, or could become, the subject of proceedings before an employment tribunal.” 15

(11) In the heading of that section omit “relating to employment matters”.

(12) In section 120(4) of that Act (regulations and orders subject to parliamentary approval) for “58AA” substitute “58AA(4)”. 20

(13) The amendments made by subsections (1) to (11) do not apply in relation to an agreement entered into before this section comes into force.

#### 45 Recovery of insurance premiums by way of costs

(1) In the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990, after section 58B insert –

**“58C Recovery of insurance premiums by way of costs” 25**

(1) A costs order made in favour of a party to proceedings who has taken out a costs insurance policy may not include provision requiring the payment of an amount in respect of all or part of the premium of the policy, unless such provision is permitted by regulations under subsection (2). 30

(2) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations provide that a costs order may include provision requiring the payment of such an amount where –

(a) the order is made in favour of a party to clinical negligence proceedings of a prescribed description,

(b) the party has taken out a costs insurance policy insuring against the risk of incurring a liability to pay for one or more expert reports in respect of clinical negligence in connection with the proceedings (or against that risk and other risks), 35

(c) the policy is of a prescribed description,

(d) the policy states how much of the premium relates to the liability to pay for an expert report or reports in respect of clinical negligence (“the relevant part of the premium”), and 40

(e) the amount is to be paid in respect of the relevant part of the premium.

- 
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may include provision about the amount that may be required to be paid by the costs order, including provision that the amount must not exceed a prescribed maximum amount.
- (4) The regulations may prescribe a maximum amount, in particular, by specifying— 5
- (a) a percentage of the relevant part of the premium;
  - (b) an amount calculated in a prescribed manner.
- (5) In this section—
- “clinical negligence” means breach of a duty of care or trespass to the person committed in the course of the provision of clinical or medical services (including dental or nursing services); 10
- “clinical negligence proceedings” means proceedings which include a claim for damages in respect of clinical negligence;
- “costs insurance policy”, in relation to a party to proceedings, means a policy insuring against the risk of the party incurring a liability in those proceedings; 15
- “expert report” means a report by a person qualified to give expert advice on all or most of the matters that are the subject of the report; 20
- “proceedings” includes any sort of proceedings for resolving disputes (and not just proceedings in court), whether commenced or contemplated.”
- (2) In the Access to Justice Act 1999, omit section 29 (recovery of insurance premiums by way of costs). 25
- (3) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to a costs order made in favour of a party to proceedings who took out a costs insurance policy in relation to the proceedings before the day on which this section comes into force.
- 46 Recovery where body undertakes to meet costs liabilities 30**
- (1) In the Access to Justice Act 1999, omit section 30 (recovery where body undertakes to meet costs liabilities).
- (2) The repeal made by subsection (1) does not apply in relation to a costs order made in favour of a party to proceedings to whom a body gave an undertaking in respect of the costs of other parties to the proceedings before the day on which this section comes into force. 35
- 47 Divorce etc proceedings: orders for payment in respect of legal services**
- (1) In section 22 of the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973 (maintenance pending suit)—
- (a) number the existing provision subsection (1), and
  - (b) after that subsection insert— 40
- “(2) An order under this section may not require a party to a marriage to pay to the other party any amount in respect of legal services for the purposes of the proceedings.
- (3) In subsection (2) “legal services” has the same meaning as in section 22ZA.” 45



(2) After that section insert –

**“22ZA Orders for payment in respect of legal services**

- (1) In proceedings for divorce, nullity of marriage or judicial separation, the court may make an order or orders requiring one party to the marriage to pay to the other (“the applicant”) an amount for the purpose of enabling the applicant to obtain legal services for the purposes of the proceedings. 5
- (2) The court may also make such an order or orders in proceedings under this Part for financial relief in connection with proceedings for divorce, nullity of marriage or judicial separation. 10
- (3) The court must not make an order under this section unless it is satisfied that, without the amount, the applicant would not reasonably be able to obtain appropriate legal services for the purposes of the proceedings or any part of the proceedings.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3), the court must be satisfied, in particular, that – 15
  - (a) the applicant is not reasonably able to secure a loan to pay for the services, and
  - (b) the applicant is unlikely to be able to obtain the services by granting a charge over any assets recovered in the proceedings. 20
- (5) An order under this section may be made for the purpose of enabling the applicant to obtain legal services of a specified description, including legal services provided in a specified period or for the purposes of a specified part of the proceedings.
- (6) An order under this section may – 25
  - (a) provide for the payment of all or part of the amount by instalments of specified amounts, and
  - (b) require the instalments to be secured to the satisfaction of the court.
- (7) An order under this section may direct that payment of all or part of the amount is to be deferred. 30
- (8) The court may at any time in the proceedings vary an order made under this section if it considers that there has been a material change of circumstances since the order was made.
- (9) For the purposes of the assessment of costs in the proceedings, the applicant’s costs are to be treated as reduced by any amount paid to the applicant pursuant to an order under this section for the purposes of those proceedings. 35
- (10) In this section “legal services”, in relation to proceedings, means the following types of services – 40
  - (a) providing advice as to how the law applies in the particular circumstances,
  - (b) providing advice and assistance in relation to the proceedings,
  - (c) providing other advice and assistance in relation to the settlement or other resolution of the dispute that is the subject of the proceedings, and 45

- 
- (d) providing advice and assistance in relation to the enforcement of decisions in the proceedings or as part of the settlement or resolution of the dispute,  
and they include, in particular, advice and assistance in the form of representation and any form of dispute resolution, including mediation. 5
- (11) In subsections (5) and (6) “specified” means specified in the order concerned.”
- 48 Divorce etc proceedings: matters to be considered by court making legal services order 10**
- After section 22ZA of the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973 insert –
- “22ZB Matters to which court is to have regard in deciding how to exercise power under section 22ZA**
- (1) When considering whether to make or vary an order under section 22ZA, the court must have regard to – 15
- (a) the income, earning capacity, property and other financial resources which each of the applicant and the paying party has or is likely to have in the foreseeable future,
  - (b) the financial needs, obligations and responsibilities which each of the applicant and the paying party has or is likely to have in the foreseeable future, 20
  - (c) the subject matter of the proceedings, including the matters in issue in them,
  - (d) whether the paying party is legally represented in the proceedings, 25
  - (e) any steps taken by the applicant to avoid all or part of the proceedings, whether by proposing or considering mediation or otherwise,
  - (f) the applicant’s conduct in relation to the proceedings,
  - (g) any amount owed by the applicant to the paying party in respect of costs in the proceedings or other proceedings to which both the applicant and the paying party are or were party, and 30
  - (h) the effect of the order or variation on the paying party.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a) “earning capacity”, in relation to the applicant or the paying party, includes any increase in earning capacity which, in the opinion of the court, it would be reasonable to expect the applicant or the paying party to take steps to acquire. 35
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(h), the court must have regard, in particular, to whether the making or variation of the order is likely to – 40
- (a) cause undue hardship to the paying party, or
  - (b) prevent the paying party from obtaining legal services for the purposes of the proceedings.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may by order amend this section by adding to, omitting or varying the matters mentioned in subsections (1) to (3). 45
- (5) An order under subsection (4) must be made by statutory instrument.

(6) A statutory instrument containing an order under subsection (4) may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.

(7) In this section “legal services” has the same meaning as in section 22ZA.”

5

#### 49 Divorce etc proceedings: orders for sale of property

In section 24A(1) of the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973 (orders for sale of property), after “makes” insert “an order under section 22ZA or makes”.

#### 50 Dissolution etc proceedings: orders for payment in respect of legal services

(1) Part 8 of Schedule 5 to the Civil Partnership Act 2004 (maintenance pending outcome of dissolution etc proceedings) is amended as follows. 10

(2) In the heading of that Part after “Maintenance” insert “and other payments”.

(3) Before paragraph 38 insert –

*“Maintenance orders”.*

(4) In that paragraph –

15

(a) number the existing provision sub-paragraph (1), and

(b) after that sub-paragraph insert –

“(2) An order under this paragraph may not require one civil partner to pay to the other any amount in respect of legal services for the purposes of the proceedings.

20

(3) In sub-paragraph (2) “legal services” has the same meaning as in paragraph 38A.”

(5) After that paragraph insert –

*“Orders in respect of legal services*

38A (1) In proceedings for a dissolution, nullity or separation order, the court may make an order or orders requiring one civil partner to pay to the other (“the applicant”) an amount for the purpose of enabling the applicant to obtain legal services for the purposes of the proceedings. 25

(2) The court may also make such an order or orders in proceedings under this Schedule for financial relief in connection with proceedings for a dissolution, nullity or separation order. 30

(3) The court must not make an order under this paragraph unless it is satisfied that, without the amount, the applicant would not reasonably be able to obtain appropriate legal services for the purposes of the proceedings or any part of the proceedings. 35

(4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3), the court must be satisfied, in particular, that –

(a) the applicant is not reasonably able to secure a loan to pay for the services, and 40

- 
- (b) the applicant is unlikely to be able to obtain the services by granting a charge over any assets recovered in the proceedings.
- (5) An order under this paragraph may be made for the purpose of enabling the applicant to obtain legal services of a specified description, including legal services provided in a specified period or for the purposes of a specified part of the proceedings. 5
- (6) An order under this paragraph may –
- (a) provide for the payment of all or part of the amount by instalments of specified amounts, and 10
- (b) require the instalments to be secured to the satisfaction of the court.
- (7) An order under this paragraph may direct that payment of all or part of the amount is to be deferred.
- (8) The court may at any time in the proceedings vary an order made under this paragraph if it considers that there has been a material change of circumstances since the order was made. 15
- (9) For the purposes of the assessment of costs in the proceedings, the applicant’s costs are to be treated as reduced by any amount paid to the applicant pursuant to an order under this section for the purposes of those proceedings. 20
- (10) In this paragraph “legal services”, in relation to proceedings, means the following types of services –
- (a) providing advice as to how the law applies in the particular circumstances, 25
- (b) providing advice and assistance in relation to the proceedings,
- (c) providing other advice and assistance in relation to the settlement or other resolution of the dispute that is the subject of the proceedings, and 30
- (d) providing advice and assistance in relation to the enforcement of decisions in the proceedings or as part of the settlement or resolution of the dispute,
- and they include, in particular, advice and assistance in the form of representation and any form of dispute resolution, including mediation. 35
- (11) In sub-paragraphs (5) and (6) “specified” means specified in the order concerned.”
- 51 Dissolution etc proceedings: matters to be considered by court making legal services order 40**
- After paragraph 38A of Schedule 5 to the Civil Partnership Act 2004 insert –
- “38B(1) When considering whether to make or vary an order under paragraph 38A, the court must have regard to –
- (a) the income, earning capacity, property and other financial resources which each of the applicant and the paying party has or is likely to have in the foreseeable future, 45

- (b) the financial needs, obligations and responsibilities which each of the applicant and the paying party has or is likely to have in the foreseeable future,
  - (c) the subject matter of the proceedings, including the matters in issue in them, 5
  - (d) whether the paying party is legally represented in the proceedings,
  - (e) any steps taken by the applicant to avoid all or part of the proceedings, whether by proposing or considering mediation or otherwise, 10
  - (f) the applicant’s conduct in relation to the proceedings,
  - (g) any amount owed by the applicant to the paying party in respect of costs in the proceedings or other proceedings to which both the applicant and the paying party are or were party, and 15
  - (h) the effect of the order or variation on the paying party.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(a) “earning capacity”, in relation to the applicant or the paying party, includes any increase in earning capacity which, in the opinion of the court, it would be reasonable to expect the applicant or the paying party to take steps to acquire. 20
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(h), the court must have regard, in particular, to whether the making or variation of the order is likely to –
- (a) cause undue hardship to the paying party, or
  - (b) prevent the paying party from obtaining legal services for the purposes of the proceedings. 25
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may by order amend this paragraph by adding to, omitting or varying the matters mentioned in sub-paragraphs (1) to (3).
- (5) An order under sub-paragraph (4) must be made by statutory instrument. 30
- (6) A statutory instrument containing an order under sub-paragraph (4) may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (7) In this paragraph “legal services” has the same meaning as in paragraph 38A.” 35

## 52 Dissolution etc proceedings: orders for sale of property

- (1) Paragraph 10(1)(a) of Schedule 5 to the Civil Partnership Act 2004 (sale of property orders) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit the “or” at the end of sub-paragraph (i). 40
- (3) After sub-paragraph (ii) insert –
  - “(iii) an order under paragraph 38A for a payment in respect of legal services, or”.

*Offers to settle*

**53 Payment of additional amount to successful claimant**

- |  |    |
|--|----|
| (1) Rules of court may make provision for a court to order a defendant in civil proceedings to pay an additional amount to a claimant in those proceedings where—  | 5  |
| (a) the claim is a claim for (and only for) an amount of money,  |    |
| (b) judgment is given in favour of the claimant,   |    |
| (c) the judgment in respect of the claim is at least as advantageous as an offer to settle the claim which the claimant made in accordance with rules of court and has not withdrawn in accordance with those rules, and               | 10 |
| (d) any prescribed conditions are satisfied.   |    |
| (2) Rules made under subsection (1) may include provision as to the assessment of whether a judgment is at least as advantageous as an offer to settle.  |    |
| (3) In subsection (1) “additional amount” means an amount not exceeding a prescribed percentage of the amount awarded to the claimant by the court (excluding any amount awarded in respect of the claimant’s costs).                  | 15 |
| (4) The Lord Chancellor may by order provide that rules of court may make provision for a court to order a defendant in civil proceedings to pay an amount calculated in a prescribed manner to a claimant in those proceedings where— | 20 |
| (a) the claim is or includes a non-monetary claim,   |    |
| (b) judgment is given in favour of the claimant,   |    |
| (c) the judgment in respect of the claim is at least as advantageous as an offer to settle the claim which the claimant made in accordance with rules of court and has not withdrawn in accordance with those rules, and               | 25 |
| (d) any prescribed conditions are satisfied.   |    |
| (5) An order under subsection (4) must provide for the amount to be calculated by reference to one or more of the following—   | 30 |
| (a) any costs ordered by the court to be paid to the claimant by the defendant in the proceedings;   |    |
| (b) any amount awarded to the claimant by the court in respect of so much of the claim as is for an amount of money (excluding any amount awarded in respect of the claimant’s costs);   | 35 |
| (c) the value of any non-monetary benefit awarded to the claimant.   |    |
| (6) An order under subsection (4)—   |    |
| (a) must provide that rules made under the order may include provision as to the assessment of whether a judgment is at least as advantageous as an offer to settle, and   | 40 |
| (b) may provide that such rules may make provision as to the calculation of the value of a non-monetary benefit awarded to a claimant.   |    |
| (7) Conditions prescribed under subsection (1)(d) or (4)(d) may, in particular, include conditions relating to—  |    |
| (a) the nature of the claim;   | 45 |
| (b) the amount of money awarded to the claimant;   |    |

- (c) the value of the non-monetary benefit awarded to the claimant.
- (8) Orders under this section are to be made by the Lord Chancellor by statutory instrument.
- (9) A statutory instrument containing an order under this section is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament. 5
- (10) Rules of court and orders made under this section may make different provision in relation to different cases.
- (11) In this section –  
“civil proceedings” means proceedings to which rules of court made under the Civil Procedure Act 1997 apply; 10  
“non-monetary claim” means a claim for a benefit other than an amount of money;  
“prescribed” means prescribed by order made by the Lord Chancellor.

*Referral fees*

- 54 Rules against referral fees** 15
- (1) A regulated person is in breach of this section if –  
(a) the regulated person refers prescribed legal business to another person and is paid or has been paid for the referral, or  
(b) prescribed legal business is referred to the regulated person, and the regulated person pays or has paid for the referral. 20
- (2) A regulated person is also in breach of this section if in providing legal services in the course of prescribed legal business the regulated person –  
(a) arranges for another person to provide services to the client, and  
(b) is paid or has been paid for making the arrangement.
- (3) Section 57 defines “regulated person”. 25
- (4) “Prescribed legal business” means business that involves the provision of legal services to a client, where –  
(a) the legal services relate to a claim or potential claim for damages for personal injury or death, or  
(b) the business is of a description specified in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor. 30
- (5) There is a referral of prescribed legal business if –  
(a) a person provides information to another,  
(b) it is information that a provider of legal services would need to make an offer to the client to provide relevant services, and 35  
(c) the person providing the information is not the client;  
and “relevant services” means any of the legal services that the business involves.
- (6) “Legal services” means services provided by a person which consist of or include legal activities (within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007) carried on by or on behalf of that person; and a provider of legal services is a person authorised to carry on a reserved legal activity within the meaning of that Act. 40

- (7) “Client” –
- (a) where subsection (4)(a) applies, means the person who makes or would made the claim;
  - (b) where subsection (4)(b) applies, has the meaning given by the regulations. 5
- (8) Payment includes any form of consideration (but does not include the provision of hospitality that is reasonable in the circumstances).

## **55 Effect of the rules against referral fees**

- (1) The relevant regulator must ensure that it has appropriate arrangements for monitoring and enforcing the restrictions imposed on regulated persons by section 54. 10
- (2) A regulator may make rules for the purposes of subsection (1).
- (3) The rules may in particular provide for the relevant regulator to exercise in relation to anything done in breach of that section any powers (subject to subsections (5) and (6)) that the regulator would have in relation to anything done by the regulated person in breach of another restriction. 15
- (4) Where the relevant regulator is the Financial Services Authority, section 56 applies instead of subsections (1) to (3) (and (7) to (9)).
- (5) A breach of section 54 –
- (a) does not make a person guilty of an offence, and 20
  - (b) does not give rise to a right of action for breach of statutory duty.
- (6) A breach of section 54 does not make anything void or unenforceable, but a contract to make or pay for a referral or arrangement in breach of that section is unenforceable.
- (7) Subsection (8) applies in a case where – 25
- (a) a referral of prescribed legal business has been made by or to a regulated person, or
  - (b) a regulated person has made an arrangement as mentioned in section 54(2)(a),
- and it appears to the regulator that a payment made to or by the regulated person may be a payment for the referral or for making the arrangement (a “referral fee”). 30
- (8) Rules under subsection (2) may provide for the payment to be treated as a referral fee unless the regulated person shows that the payment was made –
- (a) as consideration for the provision of services, or 35
  - (b) for another reason,
- and not as a referral fee.
- (9) For the purposes of provision made by virtue of subsection (8) a payment that would otherwise be regarded as consideration for the provision of services of any description may be treated as a referral fee if it exceeds the amount specified in relation to services of that description in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor. 40



**56 Regulation by the FSA**

- (1) The Treasury may make regulations to enable the Financial Services Authority, where it is the relevant regulator, to take action for monitoring and enforcing compliance with the restrictions imposed on regulated persons by section 54.
- (2) The regulations may apply, or make provision corresponding to, any of the provisions of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 with or without modification. 5
- (3) Those provisions include in particular –
  - (a) provisions as to investigations, including powers of entry and search and criminal offences; 10
  - (b) provisions for the grant of an injunction in relation to a contravention or anticipated contravention.
  - (c) provisions giving Ministers or the Financial Services Authority powers to make subordinate legislation;
  - (d) provisions for the Financial Services Authority to charge fees. 15
- (4) The regulations may make provision corresponding to the provision that may be made by virtue of section 55(7) to (9) (but as if the reference to the Lord Chancellor were a reference to the Treasury).
- (5) The power to make regulations under this section is subject to section 55(5) and (6). 20

**57 Regulators and regulated persons**

- (1) In relation to a referral of business within section 54(4)(a) –
  - (a) a regulator is any person listed in column 1 below;
  - (b) a regulated person is any person listed in column 2;
  - (c) a regulator in column 1 is the relevant regulator in relation to the corresponding person in column 2. 25

<i>1. Regulator</i>	<i>2. Regulated person</i>	
the Financial Services Authority	an authorised person (within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) of a description specified in regulations made by the Treasury	30
the Claims Management Regulator	a person authorised by the Regulator under section 5(1)(a) of the Compensation Act 2006 to provide regulated claims management services	35
the General Council of the Bar	a person authorised by the Council to carry on a reserved legal activity within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007	40

<i>1. Regulator</i>	<i>2. Regulated person</i>	
the Law Society	a person authorised by the Society to carry on a reserved legal activity within the meaning of the Legal Services Act 2007	5
a regulatory body specified for the purposes of this subsection in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor	a person of a description specified in the regulations in relation to the body	10

- (2) In relation to a referral of prescribed legal business of any other kind –
- (a) a regulator is any person listed in column 1 below and specified in relation to business of that kind in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor;
  - (b) a regulated person is any person specified in accordance with column 2 in relation to business of that kind; 15
  - (c) a person specified under paragraph (a) in relation to business of that kind is the relevant regulator in relation to a person specified in accordance with the corresponding entry in column 2 in relation to business of that kind. 20

<i>1. Regulator</i>	<i>2. Regulated person</i>	
the Financial Services Authority	an authorised person (within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) of a description specified in regulations made by the Treasury	25
the Claims Management Regulator	a person who is authorised by the Regulator under section 5(1)(a) of the Compensation Act 2006 to provide regulated claims management services and is of a description specified in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor	30
an approved regulator for the purposes of Part 3 of the Legal Services Act 2007 (approved legal activities);	a person who is authorised by the regulator to carry on a reserved legal activity and is of a description specified in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor	35
a licensing authority for the purposes of Part 5 of that Act (alternative business structures)	a person who is licensed by the authority to carry on a reserved legal activity and is of a description specified in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor	40

**58 Referral fees: regulations**

- (1) This section applies to any regulations under sections 54 to 57.
- (2) The regulations are to be made by statutory instrument.
- (3) The power to make the regulations includes power to make consequential, supplementary, incidental, transitional, transitory or saving provision. 5
- (4) A statutory instrument containing the regulations may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.

*Costs in criminal cases*

**59 Costs in criminal cases** 10

- (1) Schedule 7 (costs in criminal cases) has effect.
- (2) Schedule 8 (costs in criminal cases: service courts) has effect.

**PART 3**

SENTENCING AND PUNISHMENT OF OFFENDERS

**CHAPTER 1** 15

SENTENCING

*General*

**60 Court's duty to consider compensation order**

- (1) In section 130 of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (compensation orders against convicted persons), after subsection (2) insert – 20  
“(2A) A court must consider making a compensation order in any case where this section empowers it to do so.”
- (2) In section 175 of the Armed Forces Act 2006 (service compensation orders), after subsection (7) insert –  
“(7A) The court must consider making a service compensation order in any case where it has power to do so.” 25

**61 Duty to give reasons for and to explain effect of sentence**

- (1) The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- (2) For section 174 substitute –  
**“174 Duty to give reasons for and to explain effect of sentence** 30
  - (1) A court passing sentence on an offender has the duties in subsections (2) and (3).
  - (2) The court must state in open court, in ordinary language and in general terms, the court's reasons for deciding on the sentence.

- 
- (3) The court must explain to the offender in ordinary language –
- (a) the effect of the sentence,
  - (b) the effects of non-compliance with any order that the offender is required to comply with and that forms part of the sentence,
  - (c) any power of the court to vary or review any order that forms part of the sentence, and
  - (d) the effects of failure to pay a fine, if the sentence consists of or includes a fine.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may by order –
- (a) prescribe cases in which either duty does not apply, and
  - (b) prescribe cases in which the statement or explanation may be made in the absence of the offender, or may be provided in written form.
- (5) Subsections (6) to (8) are particular duties of the court in complying with the duty in subsection (2).
- (6) The court must identify any definitive sentencing guidelines relevant to the offender’s case and –
- (a) explain how the court discharged any duty imposed on it by section 125 of the Coroners and Justice Act 2009 (duty to follow guidelines unless satisfied it would be contrary to the interests of justice to do so);
  - (b) where the court was satisfied it would be contrary to the interests of justice to follow the guidelines, state why.
- (7) Where, as a result of taking into account any matter referred to in section 144(1) (guilty pleas), the court imposes a punishment on the offender which is less severe than the punishment it would otherwise have imposed, the court must state that fact.
- (8) Where the offender is under 18 and the court imposes a sentence that may only be imposed in the offender’s case if the court is of the opinion mentioned in –
- (a) section 1(4)(a) to (c) of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 and section 148(1) of this Act (youth rehabilitation order with intensive supervision and surveillance or with fostering), or
  - (b) section 152(2) of this Act (discretionary custodial sentence),
- the court must state why it is of that opinion.
- (9) In this section “definitive sentencing guidelines” means sentencing guidelines issued by the Sentencing Council for England and Wales under section 120 of the Coroners and Justice Act 2009 as definitive guidelines, as revised by any subsequent guidelines so issued.”
- (3) In section 270 (duty to give reasons) –
- (a) for subsection (1) substitute –
    - “(1) Subsection (2) applies where a court makes an order under section 269(2) or (4).”, and
  - (b) in subsection (2) for “In stating its reasons” substitute “In complying with the duty under section 174(1)(a) to state its reasons for deciding on the order made,”.

- (4) In the Armed Forces Act 2006 –
  - (a) in section 252 (duty to give reasons and explain sentence), omit subsection (2);
  - (b) in section 253 (duties in complying with section 252), omit subsections (1)(a), (c) and (d) and (2)(b) and (d) to (h). 5
- (5) In consequence of the amendments made by this section omit –
  - (a) paragraph 9(6) of Schedule 1 to the Violent Crime Reduction Act 2006;
  - (b) paragraph 80 of Schedule 4 to the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008;
  - (c) paragraph 24 of Schedule 25 to that Act; 10
  - (d) paragraph 84 of Schedule 21 to the Coroners and Justice Act 2009.

*Community orders*

**62 Duration of community order**

- (1) In section 177 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (general provisions about community orders), in subsection (5) (requirement for order to specify date on which requirements must have been complied with) – 15
  - (a) after the first “date” insert “(“the end date””, and
  - (b) omit the words from “; and” to the end of the subsection.
- (2) After that subsection insert –
  - “(5A) If a community order imposes two or more different requirements falling within subsection (1), the order may also specify a date by which each of those requirements must have been complied with; and the last of those dates must be the same as the end date. 20
  - (5B) Subject to section 200(3) (duration of community order imposing unpaid work requirement), a community order ceases to be in force on the end date.” 25
- (3) In Schedule 8 to that Act (breach, revocation or amendment of community order), in paragraph 9 (powers of magistrates’ court in case of breach) –
  - (a) in sub-paragraph (3), for the words from “but may” to the end of the sub-paragraph substitute “but may only amend the order to substitute a later date for that specified under section 177(5) in accordance with sub-paragraphs (3ZA) and (3ZB)”, and 30
  - (b) after that sub-paragraph insert –
    - “(3ZA) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (3) –
      - (a) may not fall outside the period of six months beginning with the date previously specified under section 177(5); 35
      - (b) subject to that, may fall more than three years after the date of the order.
    - (3ZB) The power under sub-paragraph (3) to substitute a date may not be exercised in relation to an order if that power or the power in paragraph 10(3) to substitute a date has previously been exercised in relation to that order. 40

- (3ZC) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (3) is to be treated as having been specified in relation to the order under section 177(5).”
- (4) In that Schedule, in paragraph 10 (powers of Crown Court in case of breach) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (3), for the words from “but may” to the end of the sub-paragraph substitute “but may only amend the order to substitute a later date for that specified under section 177(5) in accordance with sub-paragraphs (3ZA) and (3ZB)”, and 5
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert –
- “(3ZA) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (3) – 10
- (a) may not fall outside the period of six months beginning with the date previously specified under section 177(5);
- (b) subject to that, may fall more than three years after the date of the order. 15
- (3ZB) The power under sub-paragraph (3) to substitute a date may not be exercised in relation to an order if that power or the power under paragraph 9(3) to substitute a date has previously been exercised in relation to that order.
- (3ZC) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (3) is to be treated as having been specified in relation to the order under section section 177(5).” 20
- (5) In that Schedule, after paragraph 19 insert –
- “Extension of order*
- 19A (1) The appropriate court may, on the application of the offender or the responsible officer, amend a community order by substituting a later date for that specified under section 177(5). 25
- (2) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (1) –
- (a) may not fall outside the period of six months beginning with the date previously specified under section 177(5); 30
- (b) subject to that, may fall more than three years after the date of the order.
- (3) The power under sub-paragraph (1) may not be exercised in relation to an order if it has previously been exercised in relation to that order. 35
- (4) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (1) is to be treated as having been specified in relation to the order under section 177(5).
- (5) In this paragraph “the appropriate court” has the same meaning as in paragraph 16.”
- 63 Breach of community order 40**
- (1) Schedule 8 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (breach, revocation or amendment of community order) is amended as follows.

- (2) In paragraph 9 (powers of magistrates’ court in case of breach), in sub-paragraph (1)–
- (a) in the opening words, for “must” substitute “may”, and
  - (b) after paragraph (a) insert –
    - “(aa) by ordering the offender to pay a fine of an amount not exceeding £2,500;”.
- (3) In that paragraph, after sub-paragraph (3A) insert –
- “(3B) A fine imposed under sub-paragraph (1)(aa) is to be treated, for the purposes of any enactment, as being a sum adjudged to be paid by a conviction.”
- (4) In sub-paragraph (6) of that paragraph, for the words from “be required to” to “or (c),” substitute “have the power to deal with the offender under sub-paragraph (1)(a), (aa), (b) or (c),”.
- (5) In paragraph 10 (powers of Crown Court in case of breach), in sub-paragraph (1)–
- (a) in the opening words, for “must” substitute “may”, and
  - (b) after paragraph (a) insert –
    - “(aa) by ordering the offender to pay a fine of an amount not exceeding £2,500;”.
- (6) In that paragraph, after sub-paragraph (3A) insert –
- “(3B) A fine imposed under sub-paragraph (1)(aa) is to be treated, for the purposes of any enactment, as being a sum adjudged to be paid by a conviction.”
- (7) After paragraph 11 insert –
- “Power to amend amounts of fines”*
- 11A (1) The Secretary of State may by order amend any sum for the time being specified in paragraph 9(1)(aa) or 10(1)(aa).
- (2) The power conferred by sub-paragraph (1) may be exercised only if it appears to the Secretary of State that there has been a change in the value of money since the relevant date which justifies the change.
  - (3) In sub-paragraph (2), “the relevant date” means –
    - (a) if the sum specified in paragraph 9(1)(aa) or 10(1)(aa) (as the case may be) has been substituted by an order under sub-paragraph (1), the date on which the sum was last so substituted;
    - (b) otherwise the date on which section 63 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 (which inserted this paragraph) came into force.
  - (4) An order under sub-paragraph (1) (a “fine amendment order”) must not have effect in relation to any community order made in respect of an offence committed before the fine amendment order comes into force.”

*Suspended sentence orders*

**64 Changes to powers to make suspended sentence order**

- (1) In section 189 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (suspended sentences of imprisonment), for subsection (1) substitute –
- “(1) If a court passes a sentence of imprisonment for a term of least 14 days but not more than 2 years, it may make an order providing that the sentence of imprisonment is not to take effect unless –
- (a) during a period specified in the order for the purposes of this paragraph (“the operational period”) the offender commits another offence in the United Kingdom (whether or not punishable with imprisonment), and
- (b) a court having power to do so subsequently orders under paragraph 8 of Schedule 12 that the original sentence is to take effect.
- (1A) An order under subsection (1) may also provide that the offender must comply during a period specified in the order for the purposes of this subsection (“the supervision period”) with one or more requirements falling within section 190(1) and specified in the order.
- (1B) Where an order under subsection (1) contains provision under subsection (1A), it must provide that the sentence of imprisonment will also take effect if –
- (a) during the supervision period the offender fails to comply with a requirement imposed under subsection (1A), and
- (b) a court having power to do so subsequently orders under paragraph 8 of Schedule 12 that the original sentence is to take effect.”
- (2) In subsection (2) of that section (application of subsection (1) where consecutive sentences imposed), for the words from “does not exceed” to the end substitute “does not exceed 2 years”.
- (3) In subsection (3) of that section (length of supervision period and operational period), after “supervision period” insert “(if any)”.
- (4) In subsection (4) of that section (supervision period not to end later than operational period), at the beginning insert “Where an order under subsection (1) imposes one or more community requirements,”.
- (5) In subsection (7)(c) of that section (meaning of “community requirement”), for “(1)(a)” substitute “(1A)”.
- (6) Schedule 9 (changes to powers to make suspended sentence orders: consequential and transitory provision) has effect.
- (7) The amendments and modifications made by this section and that Schedule apply in relation to offences committed before or after the coming into force of any provision of this section or that Schedule.



## 65 Fine for breach of suspended sentence order

- (1) Schedule 12 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (breach or amendment of suspended sentence order, and effect of further conviction) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 8 (powers of court in case of breach or conviction) –
  - (a) in sub-paragraph (2), after paragraph (b) insert –

“(ba) the court may order the offender to pay a fine of an amount not exceeding £2,500,”
  - (b) after sub-paragraph (4) insert –

“(4ZA) A fine imposed under sub-paragraph (2)(ba) is to be treated, for the purposes of any enactment, as being a sum adjudged to be paid by a conviction.”, and
  - (c) in sub-paragraph (6), after “(b)” insert “, (ba)”.
- (3) After paragraph 12 insert –

*“Power to amend amount of fine*

12A (1) The Secretary of State may by order amend the sum for the time being specified in paragraph 8(2)(ba).

  - (2) The power conferred by sub-paragraph (1) may be exercised only if it appears to the Secretary of State that there has been a change in the value of money since the relevant date which justifies the change.
  - (3) In sub-paragraph (2), “the relevant date” means –
    - (a) if the sum specified in paragraph 8(2)(ba) has been substituted by an order under sub-paragraph (1), the date on which the sum was last so substituted;
    - (b) otherwise the date on which section 65 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 (which inserted this paragraph) came into force.
  - (4) An order under sub-paragraph (1) (a “fine amendment order”) must not have effect in relation to any suspended sentence order made in respect of an offence committed before the fine amendment order comes into force.”

### *Requirements under community orders and suspended sentence orders*

## 66 Programme requirement

- (1) In section 177(2) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (community orders: restrictions relating to particular requirements) omit paragraph (c) (which refers to section 202(4) and (5) of that Act).
- (2) In section 190(2) of that Act (suspended sentence orders: restrictions relating to particular requirements) omit paragraph (c) (which refers to section 202(4) and (5) of that Act).
- (3) Section 202 of that Act (orders imposing programme requirements) is amended as follows.
- (4) In subsection (1) (meaning of “programme requirement”) –

- 
- (a) after “participate” insert “in accordance with this section”, and  
 (b) for the words from “specified in the order” to the end of the subsection substitute “on the number of days specified in the order.”
- (5) Omit subsections (4) and (5) (requirements to be met before court includes a programme requirement in a relevant order). 5
- (6) In subsection (6) (effect of programme requirement) –  
 (a) for “requirement to attend an accredited programme” substitute “programme requirement”, and  
 (b) in paragraph (a), for “at the place specified in the order” substitute “that is from time to time specified by the responsible officer at the place that is so specified”. 10
- (7) In subsection (7) (requirement for place providing programme requirement to be approved) for “in an order” substitute “by a responsible officer”.
- (8) In consequence of subsection (5), omit paragraph 86 of Schedule 4 to the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008. 15
- 67 Curfew requirement**
- (1) Section 204 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (orders imposing curfew requirements) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2) (order may not specify curfew period of more than twelve hours) for “twelve” substitute “sixteen”. 20
- (3) In subsection (3) (order may not specify curfew periods outside period of six months from making of order) for “six” substitute “twelve”.
- 68 Foreign travel prohibition requirement**
- (1) In section 177 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (community orders), in subsection (1), after paragraph (g) insert – 25  
 “(ga) a foreign travel prohibition requirement (as defined by section 206A),”.
- (2) In subsection (4) of that section (power to impose electronic monitoring requirement), after “a residence requirement,” insert “a foreign travel prohibition requirement,”. 30
- (3) In section 190 of that Act (imposition of requirements by suspended sentence order), in subsection (1), after paragraph (g) insert –  
 “(ga) a foreign travel prohibition requirement (as defined by section 206A),”.
- (4) In subsection (4) of that section (power to impose electronic monitoring requirement), after “a residence requirement,” insert “a foreign travel prohibition requirement,”. 35
- (5) After section 206 of that Act insert –
- “206A Foreign travel prohibition requirement**
- (1) In this Part “foreign travel prohibition requirement”, in relation to a relevant order, means a requirement prohibiting the offender from 40

- travelling, on a day or days specified in the order, or for a period so specified –
- (a) to any country outside the British Islands specified or described in the order,
  - (b) to any country outside the British Islands other than a country specified or described in the order, or
  - (c) to any country outside the British Islands.
- (2) A day specified under subsection (1) may not fall outside the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which the community order is made.
- (3) A period specified under that subsection may not exceed 12 months beginning with the day on which the community order is made.”
- (6) In section 305(1) of that Act (interpretation of Part 12), at the appropriate place insert –
- ““foreign travel prohibition requirement”, in relation to a community order or suspended sentence order, has the meaning given by section 206A;”.
- 69 Mental health treatment requirement**
- (1) Section 207 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (mental health treatment requirement) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)(a) (requirement for court to be satisfied as to offender’s mental condition on evidence of registered medical practitioner) –
- (a) omit the words from “, on the evidence” to “1983,”, and
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (ii), for “that Act” substitute “the Mental Health Act 1983”.
- (3) Omit subsection (5) (application of section 54(2) and (3) of the Mental Health Act 1983 to proof of offender’s mental condition).
- 70 Drug rehabilitation requirement**
- (1) In section 209 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (drug rehabilitation requirements) omit subsection (3) (requirement for treatment and testing period to be at least six months).
- (2) In section 211(2) of that Act (powers of court at review hearing) –
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “and”, and
  - (b) omit paragraph (b) and the “and” at the end of that paragraph.
- 71 Alcohol treatment requirement**
- In section 212 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (alcohol treatment requirement) omit subsection (4) (requirement for alcohol treatment requirement to have effect for at least six months).

*Overseas community orders and service community orders*

**72 Overseas community orders and service community orders**

- (1) Section 182 of the Armed Forces Act 2006 (general provisions about overseas community orders) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a) (requirements that may be imposed by overseas community orders), after “Act” insert “(but see subsection (1A) below)”. 5
- (3) After subsection (1) insert –  
 “(1A) The order may not include a requirement mentioned in section 177(1)(ga) (a foreign travel prohibition requirement).”
- (4) In subsection (4) (application of section 177(5) and (6) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 to overseas community orders), after “(5)” insert “, (5A), (5B)”. 10
- (5) In section 322 of that Act (financial penalty enforcement orders), in the definition of “financial penalty” in subsection (4), after “including” insert “a fine imposed by the Court Martial or the Service Civilian Court under paragraph 10(1)(aa) of Schedule 8 to the 2003 Act by virtue of section 184 and Part 2 of Schedule 5 (breach etc of overseas community order) or”. 15
- (6) In Part 1 of Schedule 5 to that Act (breach, revocation and amendment of service community orders), in paragraph 1(2) (provisions of Schedule 8 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003 that do not apply to such orders), after “18(4),” insert “19A(5),”. 20
- (7) Part 2 of Schedule 5 to that Act (breach, revocation and amendment of overseas community orders) is amended as follows.
- (8) In paragraph 10(2) (provisions of Schedule 8 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003 that do not apply to such orders), after “19,” insert “19A(5),”. 25
- (9) After paragraph 14 insert – 25  
 “14A(1) The following provisions apply where the Court Martial or the Service Civilian Court imposes a fine under paragraph 10(1)(aa) of that Schedule as applied by this Part of this Schedule.  
 (2) Section 251 of this Act (power to order payment of fine by instalments) applies in relation to the fine as it applies in relation to a fine imposed by a court for a service offence. 30  
 (3) Where the offender is aged under 18 when the fine is imposed and has a service parent or service guardian (within the meaning of section 268 of this Act), subsections (2) to (4) of that section (payment of fine by service parent or service guardian) apply in relation to the fine as they apply in relation to a fine imposed in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (1) of that section. 35  
 (4) In the application of subsection (2) of section 268 by virtue of subparagraph (3) of this paragraph, the reference in that subsection to the time of conviction is to be read as a reference to the time the fine is imposed. 40  
 (5) Section 269(2) of this Act (power of court to make financial statement order before making order under section 268) does not apply in

relation to an order under section 268 which is made by virtue of sub-paragraph (3) of this paragraph.”

- (10) In Schedule 6 to that Act (overseas community orders imposed on young offenders), in paragraph 5 (modification of drug rehabilitation requirement in relation to such offenders), omit sub-paragraph (4) (which disapplies section 209(3) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003). 5

#### *Youth sentences*

### **73 Referral orders for young offenders**

- (1) In section 16(1)(c) of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (duty or power to refer a young offender to a youth offender panel not to apply if court proposes to discharge the offender absolutely) for “absolutely” substitute “, whether absolutely or conditionally,”. 10
- (2) In section 17 of that Act (the referral conditions) –
- (a) in subsection (2) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “and”,
  - (b) in that subsection omit paragraph (c) and the word “and” immediately before it, and
  - (c) omit subsections (2A) to (2D). 15
- (3) In consequence of the amendment made by subsection (2)(c) omit paragraph 12(3), (4) and (5) of Schedule 17 to the Coroners and Justice Act 2009.
- (4) The amendments made by this section do not apply in relation to any sentence passed in relation to an offence committed before the coming into force of this section. 20

### **74 Breach of detention and training order**

- (1) The Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 104 (breach of detention and training order), in subsection (3) (penalties for breach), for paragraph (a) and the “or” at the end of that paragraph substitute –
- “(a) order the offender to be detained, in such youth detention accommodation as the Secretary of State may determine, for such period, not exceeding the maximum period found under subsection (3A) below, as the court may specify; 30
  - (aa) order the offender to be subject to such period of supervision, not exceeding the maximum period found under subsection (3A) below, as the court may specify; or”.
- (3) After subsection (3) of that section insert – 35
- “(3A) The maximum period referred to in subsection (3)(a) and (aa) above is the shorter of –
- (a) three months, and
  - (b) the period beginning with the date of the offender’s failure and ending with the last day of the term of the detention and training order. 40

- 
- (3B) For the purposes of subsection (3A) above a failure that is found to have occurred over two or more days is to be taken to have occurred on the first of those days.
- (3C) A court may order a period of detention or supervision, or impose a fine, under subsection (3) above before or after the end of the term of the detention and training order. 5
- (3D) A period of detention or supervision ordered under subsection (3) above –
- (a) begins on the date the order is made, and
- (b) may overlap to any extent with the period of supervision under the detention and training order.” 10
- (4) After subsection (4) of that section insert –
- “(4A) Where an order under subsection (3)(a) above is made in the case of a person who has attained the age of 18, the order has effect to require the person to be detained in prison for the period specified by the court.” 15
- (5) After subsection (5) of that section insert –
- “(5A) Sections 104A and 104B below make further provision about the operation of orders under subsection (3) above.”
- (6) In subsection (6) of that section, after “(a)” insert “, (aa)”.
- (7) After that section insert – 20
- “104A Application of sections 103 to 105 in relation to orders under section 104(3)(aa)**
- (1) Subsections (3) to (7) of section 103 above apply in relation to a period of supervision to which an offender is subject by virtue of an order under section 104(3)(aa) above as they apply to the period of supervision under a detention and training order. 25
- (2) In the application of section 103 above by virtue of subsection (1) above, subsection (7)(a) of that section is to be read as requiring a notice to be given to the offender as soon as is reasonably practicable after the order under section 104(3)(aa) above is made. 30
- (3) Section 104 above and section 105 below apply where an offender is subject to a period of supervision under section 104(3)(aa) above as they apply where a detention and training order is in force in respect of an offender.
- (4) In the application of section 104 above by virtue of subsection (3) above – 35
- (a) the references in that section to section 103(6)(b) above are to be read as references to that provision as applied by subsection (1) above,
- (b) the references in subsections (3A)(b) and (3C) of that section to the term of the detention and training order are to be read as references to the term of the period of supervision under section 104(3)(aa) above, and 40
- (c) the reference in subsection (3D)(b) of that section to the period of supervision under the detention and training order is to be 45

read as including a reference to the period of supervision under section 104(3)(aa) above.

- (5) In the application of section 105 below by virtue of subsection (3) above—
- (a) paragraph (a) of subsection (1) of that section is to be read as if the words “after his release and” were omitted, and 5
  - (b) the reference in that paragraph to the date on which the term of the detention and training order ends is to be read as a reference to the date on which the period of supervision under section 104(3)(aa) ends. 10

**104B Interaction of orders under section 104(3)(a) with other sentences**

- (1) Where a court makes a detention and training order in the case of an offender who is subject to a period of detention under section 104(3)(a) above, the detention and training order takes effect—
- (a) at the beginning of the day on which it is made, or 15
  - (b) if the court so orders, at the time when the period of detention under section 104(3)(a) above ends.
- (2) Where a court orders an offender who is subject to a detention and training order to be subject to a period of detention under section 104(3)(a) above for a failure to comply with requirements under a different detention and training order, the period of detention takes effect as follows—
- (a) if the offender has been released by virtue of subsection (2), (3), (4) or (5) of section 102 above, at the beginning of the day on which the order for the period of detention is made, and 25
  - (b) if not, either as mentioned in paragraph (a) above or, if the court so orders, at the time when the offender would otherwise be released by virtue of subsection (2), (3), (4) or (5) of section 102 above.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4) below, where at any time an offender is subject concurrently—
- (a) to a detention and training order, and
  - (b) to a period of detention under section 104(3)(a) above, the offender is to be treated for the purposes of sections 102 to 105 of this Act as if the offender were subject only to the detention and training order. 35
- (4) Nothing in subsection (3) above requires the offender to be released in respect of either the order or the period of detention unless and until the offender is required to be released in respect of each of them.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the interaction between a period of detention under section 104(3)(a) above and a custodial sentence in a case where—
- (a) an offender who is subject to such a period of detention becomes subject to a custodial sentence, or
  - (b) an offender who is subject to a custodial sentence becomes subject to such a period of detention. 45
- (6) The provision that may be made by regulations under subsection (5) above includes—

- 
- (a) provision as to the time at which the period of detention under section 104(3)(a) above or the custodial sentence is to take effect;
- (b) provision for the offender to be treated, for the purposes of the enactments specified in the regulations, as subject only to the period of detention or the custodial sentence; 5
- (c) provision about the effect of enactments relating to the person’s release from detention or imprisonment in a case where that release is not to take effect immediately by virtue of provision in the regulations.
- (7) The power of the Secretary of State to make regulations under subsection (5) above – 10
- (a) is exercisable by statutory instrument;
- (b) includes power to make supplementary, incidental, transitional, transitory or saving provision.
- (8) A statutory instrument containing regulations under subsection (5) above is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.” 15
- (8) Before the coming into force of section 61 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (abolition of sentence of detention in a young offender institution) section 104(4A) of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 has effect as if it referred to a person who has attained the age of 21. 20
- (9) In section 213 of the Armed Forces Act 2006 (application of provisions relating to civilian detention and training orders to orders under section 211 of that Act) –
- (a) in subsection (2), after “(13)” insert “, 104B(1)”, 25
- (b) after subsection (3) insert –
- “(4) Subsection (5) applies where an order under section 104(3) (further period of detention or supervision) of the Sentencing Act is made against an offender for breach of supervision requirements – 30
- (a) during a period of supervision under an order under section 211 of this Act,
- (b) during a further period of supervision imposed for breach of supervision requirements during a period within paragraph (a), or 35
- (c) during one of a series of further periods of supervision –
- (i) each of which apart from the first was imposed for breach of supervision requirements during the previous further period of supervision, and 40
- (ii) the first of which was imposed for breach of supervision requirements during a period within paragraph (a).
- (5) In the application of sections 104A and 104B of the Sentencing Act in relation to the offender, references to section 105 of that Act include section 214 of this Act. 45
- (6) In subsection (4) –



“further period of supervision” means a period of supervision imposed under section 104(3)(aa) of the Sentencing Act;

“supervision requirements” means requirements under section 103(6)(b) of that Act.

5

(7) In section 104B of the Sentencing Act, references to a custodial sentence within the meaning of that Act include a custodial sentence within the meaning of this Act.”

(10) In Schedule 3 to the Armed Forces Act 2011 (minor amendments of service legislation), in paragraph 18(b) (amendment to section 213(2) of the Armed Forces Act 2006) for “after “(13)”” substitute “before “and 106A””.

10

(11) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to a failure to comply with requirements under section 103(6)(b) of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 that occurs after this section comes into force.

(12) Where a failure is found to have occurred over two or more days, it is to be taken for the purposes of subsection (11) to have occurred on the first of those days.

15

## **75 Youth rehabilitation order: curfew requirement**

(1) Paragraph 14 of Schedule 1 to the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (youth rehabilitation order: curfew requirement) is amended as follows.

20

(2) In sub-paragraph (2) (order may not specify curfew period of more than 12 hours) for “12” substitute “16”.

(3) In sub-paragraph (3) (order may not specify curfew periods outside period of 6 months from making of order) for “6” substitute “12”.

## **76 Youth rehabilitation order: mental health treatment requirement**

25

(1) Paragraph 20 of Schedule 1 to the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (youth rehabilitation order: mental health treatment requirement) is amended as follows.

(2) In sub-paragraph (3)(a) (requirement for court to be satisfied as to offender’s mental condition on evidence of registered medical practitioner) –

30

(a) omit the words from “, on the evidence” to “1983 (c. 20),” and

(b) in sub-paragraph (ii), for “that Act” substitute “the Mental Health Act 1983”.

(3) Omit sub-paragraph (5) (application of section 54(2) and (3) of the Mental Health Act 1983 to proof of offender’s mental condition).

35

## **77 Youth rehabilitation order: duration**

(1) In Schedule 1 to the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (further provisions about youth rehabilitation orders), in paragraph 32 (requirement for order to specify date by which requirements must have been complied with) –

40

(a) in sub-paragraph (1), after the first “date” insert “(“the end date””,

- (b) for sub-paragraph (2) substitute –
- “(2) If a youth rehabilitation order imposes two or more different requirements falling within Part 2 of this Schedule, the order may also specify a date by which each of those requirements must have been complied with; and the last of those dates must be the same as the end date.” 5
- (c) after sub-paragraph (3) insert –
- “(4) Subject to paragraph 10(7) (duration of youth rehabilitation order imposing unpaid work requirement), a youth rehabilitation order ceases to be in force on the end date.” 10
- (2) In Schedule 2 to that Act (breach, revocation or amendment of youth rehabilitation order), in paragraph 6 (powers of magistrates’ court in case of breach of order) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (6), at the beginning insert “Subject to sub-paragraph (6A),”, and 15
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert –
- “(6A) When imposing a requirement under sub-paragraph (2)(b), the court may amend the order to substitute a later date for that specified under paragraph 32(1) of Schedule 1.
- (6B) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (6A) – 20
- (a) may not fall outside the period of six months beginning with the date previously specified under paragraph 32(1) of Schedule 1;
- (b) subject to that, may fall more than three years after the date on which the order took effect. 25
- (6C) The power under sub-paragraph (6A) may not be exercised in relation to an order if that power or the power in paragraph 8(6A) has previously been exercised in relation to that order.
- (6D) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (6A) is to be treated as having been specified in relation to the order under paragraph 32(1) of Schedule 1.” 30
- (3) In that Schedule, in paragraph 8 (powers of Crown Court in case of breach of order) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (6), at the beginning insert “Subject to sub-paragraph (6A),”, and 35
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert –
- “(6A) When imposing a requirement under sub-paragraph (2)(b), the Crown Court may amend the order to substitute a later date for that specified under paragraph 32(1) of Schedule 1. 40
- (6B) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (6A) –
- (a) may not fall outside the period of six months beginning with the date previously specified under paragraph 32(1) of Schedule 1;
- (b) subject to that, may fall more than three years after the date on which the order took effect. 45

- (6C) The power under sub-paragraph (6A) may not be exercised in relation to an order if that power or the power in paragraph 6(6A) has previously been exercised in relation to that order.
- (6D) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (6A) is to be treated as having been specified in relation to the order under paragraph 32(1) of Schedule 1.” 5
- (4) In that Schedule, in paragraph 16(1) (exercise of powers to amend order: further provision), at the beginning insert “Subject to paragraph 16A,”.
- (5) After that paragraph insert – 10
- “*Extension of order*
- 16A (1) The appropriate court may, on the application of the offender or the responsible officer, amend a youth rehabilitation order by substituting a later date for that specified under paragraph 32(1) of Schedule 1. 15
- (2) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (1) –
- (a) may not fall outside the period of six months beginning with the date previously specified under paragraph 32(1) of Schedule 1;
- (b) subject to that, may fall more than three years after the date on which the order took effect. 20
- (3) The power under sub-paragraph (1) may not be exercised in relation to an order if it has previously been exercised in relation to that order.
- (4) A date substituted under sub-paragraph (1) is to be treated as having been specified in relation to the order under paragraph 32(1) of Schedule 1. 25
- (5) In this paragraph “the appropriate court” means –
- (a) if the order was made by a youth court or other magistrates’ court, or was made by the Crown Court and contains a direction under paragraph 36 of Schedule 1, the court determined under sub-paragraph (6), and 30
- (b) if the order was made by the Crown Court and does not contain a direction under paragraph 36 of Schedule 1, the Crown Court. 35
- (6) The court referred to in sub-paragraph (5)(a) is –
- (a) if the offender is aged under 18 when the application is made, a youth court acting in the local justice area specified in the youth rehabilitation order, and
- (b) if the offender is aged 18 or over at that time, a magistrates’ court (other than a youth court) acting in that local justice area.” 40
- 78 Youth rehabilitation order: fine for breach**
- (1) Schedule 2 to the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (breach of requirement of youth rehabilitation order) is amended as follows. 45

- 
- (2) In paragraph 6 (powers of magistrates’ court in case of breach), in sub-paragraph (2)(a), for sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) substitute “£2,500”.
- (3) In paragraph 8 (powers of Crown Court in case of breach), in sub-paragraph (2)(a), for sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) substitute “£2,500”.
- (4) In paragraph 10 (power to amend amounts of fine) – 5  
 (a) in sub-paragraph (1) omit “(i) or (ii)” in both places, and  
 (b) in sub-paragraph (3) –  
 (i) in paragraph (a) omit “(i) or (ii)” in both places, and  
 (ii) in paragraph (b), for “this Act was passed” substitute “section 78 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 came into force”. 10

### *Fines*

#### **79 Removal of limit on certain fines on conviction by magistrates’ court**

- (1) Where a relevant offence would, apart from this subsection, be punishable on summary conviction by a fine or maximum fine of £5,000 or more (however expressed), the offence is punishable on summary conviction by a fine of any amount. 15
- (2) Where a relevant power could, apart from this subsection, be exercised to create an offence punishable on summary conviction by a fine or maximum fine of £5,000 or more (however expressed), the power may be exercised to create an offence punishable on summary conviction by a fine of any amount. 20
- (3) For the purposes of this section, an offence or power is relevant if, immediately before the commencement day, it is contained in an Act or an instrument made under an Act (whether or not the offence or power is in force at that time).
- (4) Nothing in subsection (1) affects – 25  
 (a) fines for offences committed before the commencement day,  
 (b) fines that may be imposed on a person aged under 18, or  
 (c) fines that may be imposed on a person convicted by a magistrates’ court who is to be sentenced as if convicted on indictment,  
 and nothing in subsection (2) affects a relevant power to the extent that it relates to such fines. 30
- (5) The Secretary of State may by regulations –  
 (a) make provision disapplying subsection (1) or (2),  
 (b) make provision for a fine or maximum fine in relation to which subsection (1) is disappplied to be increased instead in accordance with the regulations, and 35  
 (c) make provision for a power in relation to which subsection (2) is disappplied to be exercisable to create an offence punishable on summary conviction by a fine or maximum fine of a higher amount specified or described in the regulations. 40
- (6) Subsection (7) applies in relation to a relevant offence that, immediately before the commencement day, is punishable on summary conviction by a fine or maximum fine expressed as a proportion of an amount of £5,000 or more (however that amount is expressed).

- 
- (7) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for the offence to be punishable on summary conviction by a fine of that proportion of a higher amount specified or described in the regulations.
- (8) Regulations under this section may not include provision affecting –
- (a) fines for offences committed before the regulations come into force, 5
  - (b) fines that may be imposed on a person aged under 18, or
  - (c) fines that may be imposed on a person convicted by a magistrates’ court who is to be sentenced as if convicted on indictment,
- or provision affecting a relevant power to the extent that it relates to such fines.
- (9) Regulations under this section – 10
- (a) may make different provision for different cases or circumstances,
  - (b) may make provision generally or only for specified cases or circumstances, and
  - (c) may make consequential, incidental, supplementary, transitional, transitory or saving provision. 15
- (10) The power under subsection (9)(c), and the power under section 132 to make provision in relation to this section, include power to amend, repeal, revoke or otherwise modify any provision which, immediately before the commencement day, is contained in an Act or an instrument made under an Act (whether or not the provision is in force at that time). 20
- (11) Regulations under this section are to be made by statutory instrument.
- (12) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (13) If, immediately before the commencement day, the sum specified as level 5 on the standard scale in section 37(2) of the Criminal Justice Act 1982 (standard scale of fines for summary offences) is greater than £5,000, the references in this section to £5,000 have effect as if they were references to that sum. 25
- (14) For the purposes of this section, an offence is relevant whether it is a summary offence or an offence triable either way. 30
- (15) In this section –
- “the commencement day” means the day on which subsection (1) of this section comes into force;
  - “Act” includes an Act or Measure of the National Assembly for Wales.
- 80 Power to increase certain other fines on conviction by magistrates’ court 35**
- (1) Subsection (2) applies in relation to a relevant offence which, immediately before the commencement day, is punishable on summary conviction by a fine or maximum fine of a fixed amount of less than £5,000.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for the offence to be punishable on summary conviction by a fine or maximum fine of a higher amount specified or described in the regulations. 40
- (3) Subsection (4) applies in relation to a relevant power which, immediately before the commencement day, can be exercised to create an offence punishable on summary conviction by a fine or maximum fine of a fixed

- amount of less than £5,000 but not to create an offence so punishable by a fine or maximum fine of a fixed amount of £5,000 or more.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for the power to be exercisable to create an offence punishable on summary conviction by a fine or maximum fine of a higher amount specified or described in the regulations. 5
- (5) Regulations under this section may not specify or describe an amount exceeding whichever is the greater of—
- (a) £5,000, or
  - (b) the sum specified for the time being as level 4 on the standard scale.
- (6) Regulations under this section may not include provision affecting— 10
- (a) fines for offences committed before the regulations come into force,
  - (b) fines that may be imposed on a person aged under 18, or
  - (c) fines that may be imposed on a person convicted by a magistrates' court who is to be sentenced as if convicted on indictment,
- or provision affecting a relevant power to the extent that it relates to such fines. 15
- (7) Regulations under this section—
- (a) may make different provision for different cases or circumstances,
  - (b) may make provision generally or only for specified cases or circumstances, and
  - (c) may make consequential, incidental, supplementary, transitional, transitory or saving provision. 20
- (8) The power under subsection (7)(c) includes power to amend, repeal, revoke or otherwise modify any provision which, immediately before the commencement day, is contained in an Act or an instrument made under an Act (whether or not the provision is in force at that time). 25
- (9) Regulations under this section are to be made by statutory instrument.
- (10) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (11) If, immediately before the commencement day, the sum specified as level 5 on the standard scale in section 37(2) of the Criminal Justice Act 1982 (standard scale of fines for summary offences) is greater than £5,000, the references in this section to £5,000 have effect as if they were references to that sum. 30
- (12) In this section “Act”, “the commencement day”, “relevant offence” and “relevant power” have the same meaning as in section 79. 35

## **81 Power to amend standard scale of fines for summary offences**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order substitute higher sums for the sums for the time being specified as levels 1 to 4 on the standard scale in section 37(2) of the Criminal Justice Act 1982 (standard scale of fines for summary offences).
- (2) The power under subsection (1) may not be exercised so as to alter the ratio of one of those levels to another. 40
- (3) In section 143 of the Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 (power to alter sums including standard scale of fines for summary offences), in subsection (3)(b),

after “subsection (1) above” insert “or section 81 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.

- (4) In section 37 of the Criminal Justice Act 1982 (standard scale of fines for summary offences), in subsection (3), at the end insert “or section 81 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 5
- (5) An order under this section is to be made by statutory instrument.
- (6) A statutory instrument containing an order under this section may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (7) An order under this section does not affect fines for offences committed before the order comes into force. 10

*Repeal of uncommenced provisions*

**82 Custody plus orders and intermittent custody orders**

- (1) In the Criminal Justice Act 2003, omit the following provisions (custody plus and intermittent custody) – 15
  - (a) sections 181 to 188;
  - (b) Schedules 10 and 11.
- (2) Schedule 10 (amendments consequential on subsection (1)) has effect.

**CHAPTER 2**

**BAIL** 20

**83 Amendment of bail enactments**

Schedule 11 (amendment of enactments relating to bail) has effect.

**CHAPTER 3**

**REMANDS OF CHILDREN OTHERWISE THAN ON BAIL**

*Remands* 25

**84 Remands of children otherwise than on bail**

- (1) This section applies where –
  - (a) a court deals with a child charged with or convicted of one or more offences by remanding the child, and
  - (b) the child is not released on bail. 30
- (2) This section also applies where –
  - (a) a court remands a child in connection with extradition proceedings, and
  - (b) the child is not released on bail.

- 
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), the court must remand the child to local authority accommodation in accordance with section 85.
- (4) The court may instead remand the child to youth detention accommodation in accordance with section 95 where –
- (a) in the case of a child remanded under subsection (1), the first or second set of conditions for such a remand (see sections 91 and 92) is met in relation to the child, or 5
  - (b) in the case of a child remanded under subsection (2), the first or second set of conditions for such a remand in an extradition case (see sections 93 and 94) is met in relation to the child. 10
- (5) This section is subject to section 128(7) of the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (remands to police detention for periods of not more than 3 days); but that provision has effect in relation to a child as if for the reference to 3 clear days there were substituted a reference to 24 hours.
- (6) In this Chapter, “child” means a person under the age of 18. 15
- (7) References in this Chapter (other than in relation to extradition proceedings) to the remand of a child include a reference to –
- (a) the sending of a child for trial, and
  - (b) the committal of a child for sentence,
- and related expressions are to be construed accordingly. 20
- (8) Before the insertion of section 51A of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (sending cases to the Crown Court: children and young persons) by Schedule 3 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003 is fully in force, subsection (7) has effect as if it also referred to the committal of a child for trial.
- (9) Subsection (7) also applies to any provision of an Act other than this Act that refers (directly or indirectly) to the remand of a child under this section. 25

*Remands to local authority accommodation*

**85 Remands to local authority accommodation**

- (1) A remand to local authority accommodation is a remand to accommodation provided by or on behalf of a local authority. 30
- (2) A court that remands a child to local authority accommodation must designate the local authority that is to receive the child.
- (3) That authority must be –
- (a) in the case of a child who is being looked after by a local authority, that authority, and 35
  - (b) in any other case, the local authority in whose area it appears to the court that the child habitually resides or the offence or one of the offences was committed.
- (4) The designated authority must –
- (a) receive the child, and 40
  - (b) provide or arrange for the provision of accommodation for the child whilst the child is remanded to local authority accommodation.



- (5) Where a child is remanded to local authority accommodation, it is lawful for any person acting on behalf of the designated authority to detain the child.

## **86 Conditions etc on remands to local authority accommodation**

- (1) A court remanding a child to local authority accommodation may require the child to comply with any conditions that could be imposed under section 3(6) of the Bail Act 1976 if the child were then being granted bail. 5
- (2) The court may also require the child to comply with any conditions imposed for the purpose of securing the electronic monitoring of the child’s compliance with the conditions imposed under subsection (1) if –
- (a) in the case of a child remanded under section 84(1) (proceedings other than extradition proceedings), the requirements in section 87 are met, or 10
- (b) in the case of a child remanded under section 84(2) (extradition proceedings), the requirements in section 88 are met.
- (3) A court remanding a child to local authority accommodation may impose on the designated authority – 15
- (a) requirements for securing compliance with any conditions imposed on the child under subsection (1) or (2), or
- (b) requirements stipulating that the child must not be placed with a named person. 20
- (4) A court may only impose a condition under subsection (1) or (2), or a requirement under subsection (3), after consultation with the designated authority.
- (5) Where a child has been remanded to local authority accommodation, a relevant court – 25
- (a) may, on the application of the designated authority, impose on that child any conditions that could be imposed under subsection (1) or (2) if the court were then remanding the child to local authority accommodation, and
- (b) where it does so, may impose on the authority requirements for securing compliance with the conditions imposed under paragraph (a). 30
- (6) Where a child has been remanded to local authority accommodation, a relevant court may, on the application of the designated authority or that child, vary or revoke any conditions or requirements imposed under this section (including as previously varied under this subsection). 35
- (7) A court that imposes conditions on a child under this section or varies conditions so imposed –
- (a) must explain to the child in open court and in ordinary language why it is imposing or varying those conditions, and
- (b) if the court is a magistrates’ court, must cause a reason given under paragraph (a) to be specified in the warrant of commitment and entered in the register. 40
- (8) In this section “relevant court” –
- (a) in relation to a child remanded to local authority accommodation by virtue of section 84(1) (proceedings other than extradition proceedings), means – 45
- (i) the court by which the child was so remanded, or

- (ii) any magistrates' court that has jurisdiction in the place where the child is for the time being;
  - (b) in relation to a child remanded to local authority accommodation by virtue of section 84(2) (extradition proceedings), means the court by which the child was so remanded. 5
- (9) References in this section to consultation are to such consultation (if any) as is reasonably practicable in all the circumstances of the case.

## 87 Requirements for electronic monitoring

- (1) The requirements referred to in section 86(2)(a) (conditions for imposing electronic monitoring condition: non-extradition cases) are those set out in subsections to (2) to (6). 10
- (2) The first requirement is that the child has reached the age of twelve.
- (3) The second requirement is that the offence mentioned in section 84(1), or one or more of those offences, is an imprisonable offence.
- (4) The third requirement is that – 15
- (a) the offence mentioned in section 84(1), or one or more of those offences, is a violent or sexual offence or an offence punishable in the case of an adult with imprisonment for a term of 14 years or more, or
  - (b) the offence or offences mentioned in section 84(1), together with any other imprisonable offences of which the child has been convicted in any proceedings, amount or would, if the child were convicted of that offence or those offences, amount to a recent history of committing imprisonable offences while – 20
    - (i) on bail,
    - (ii) remanded to local authority accommodation, or 25
    - (iii) remanded to youth detention accommodation.
- (5) The fourth requirement is that the court is satisfied that the necessary provision for electronic monitoring can be made under arrangements currently available in each local justice area which is a relevant area.
- (6) The fifth requirement is that a youth offending team has informed the court that, in its opinion, the imposition of an electronic monitoring condition will be suitable in the child's case. 30
- (7) For the purposes of this section, a local justice area is a relevant area in relation to a proposed electronic monitoring condition if the court considers that it will not be practicable to secure the electronic monitoring in question unless electronic monitoring arrangements are available in that area. 35
- (8) In this Chapter –
- “electronic monitoring condition” means a condition imposed on a child remanded to local authority accommodation for the purpose of securing the electronic monitoring of the child's compliance with conditions imposed under section 86(1); 40
  - “imprisonable offence” means an offence punishable in the case of an adult with imprisonment;
  - “sexual offence” means an offence specified in Part 2 of Schedule 15 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003; 45

“violent offence” means murder or an offence specified in Part 1 of Schedule 15 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003;

“youth offending team” means a team established under section 39 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998.

- (9) The reference in subsection (4)(b) to a child being remanded to local authority accommodation or to youth detention accommodation includes a child being remanded to local authority accommodation under section 23 of the Children and Young Persons Act 1969. 5

## 88 Requirements for electronic monitoring: extradition cases

- (1) The requirements referred to in section 86(2)(b) (conditions for imposing electronic monitoring condition: extradition cases) are those set out in subsections to (2) to (6). 10
- (2) The first requirement is that the child has reached the age of twelve.
- (3) The second requirement is that the offence to which the extradition proceedings relate, or one or more of those offences, is an imprisonable offence. 15
- (4) The third requirement is that –
- (a) the conduct constituting the offence to which the extradition proceedings relate, or one or more of those offences, would, if committed in the United Kingdom, constitute a violent or sexual offence or an offence punishable in the case of an adult with imprisonment for a term of 14 years or more, or 20
- (b) the offence or offences to which the extradition proceedings relate, together with any other imprisonable offences of which the child has been convicted, amount or would, if the child were convicted of that offence or those offences, amount to a recent history of committing imprisonable offences while on bail or subject to a custodial remand. 25
- (5) The fourth requirement is that the court is satisfied that the necessary provision for electronic monitoring can be made under arrangements currently available in each local justice area which is a relevant area.
- (6) The fifth requirement is that a youth offending team has informed the court that, in its opinion, the imposition of an electronic monitoring condition will be suitable in the child’s case. 30
- (7) For the purposes of this section, a local justice area is a relevant area in relation to a proposed electronic monitoring condition if the court considers that it will not be practicable to secure the electronic monitoring in question unless electronic monitoring arrangements are available in that area. 35
- (8) References in this Chapter to an imprisonable offence, in relation to an offence with which a child has been charged or of which a child has been convicted outside the United Kingdom, are to an offence equivalent to an offence that is punishable with imprisonment in the United Kingdom. 40
- (9) References in this Chapter to a child being subject to a custodial remand are to the child being –
- (a) remanded to local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation, or

- (b) subject to a form of custodial detention in a country outside the United Kingdom while awaiting trial or sentence in that country or during a trial in that country.
- (10) The reference in subsection (9) to a child being remanded to local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation includes a child being remanded to local authority accommodation under section 23 of the Children and Young Persons Act 1969. 5
- 89 Further provisions about electronic monitoring**
- (1) Where a court imposes an electronic monitoring condition, the condition must include provision making a person responsible for the monitoring. 10
- (2) A person who is made responsible by virtue of subsection (1) must be of a description specified in an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (3) The Secretary of State may make rules for regulating –
- (a) the electronic monitoring of compliance with conditions imposed under section 86(1), and 15
- (b) in particular, the functions of persons made responsible by virtue of subsection (1) of this section.
- (4) Rules under this section may make different provision for different cases.
- (5) Any power of the Secretary of State to make an order or rules under this section is exercisable by statutory instrument. 20
- (6) A statutory instrument containing rules under this section is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- 90 Liability to arrest for breaking conditions of remand**
- (1) A child may be arrested without warrant by a constable if –
- (a) the child has been remanded to local authority accommodation, 25
- (b) conditions under section 86 have been imposed in respect of the child, and
- (c) the constable has reasonable grounds for suspecting that the child has broken any of those conditions.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), a child arrested under subsection (1) must be brought before a justice of the peace – 30
- (a) as soon as practicable, and
- (b) in any event within the period of 24 hours beginning with the child’s arrest.
- (3) If the child was arrested during the period of 24 hours ending with the time appointed for the child to appear before the court in pursuance of the remand, the child must be brought before the court before which the child was to have appeared. 35
- (4) In reckoning a period of 24 hours for the purposes of subsection (2) or (3), no account is to be taken of Christmas Day, Good Friday or any Sunday. 40
- (5) If a justice of the peace before whom a child is brought under subsection (2) is of the opinion that the child has broken any condition imposed in respect of the child under section 86, the justice of the peace must remand the child.

- (6) Section 84 applies to a child in relation to whom subsection (5) applies as if –
- (a) except in a case within paragraph (b), the child was then charged with or convicted of the offence for which the child had been remanded, or
  - (b) in the case of a child remanded in connection with extradition proceedings, the child was then appearing before the justice of the peace in connection with those proceedings. 5
- (7) If a justice of the peace before whom a child is brought under subsection (2) is not of the opinion mentioned in subsection (5), the justice of the peace must remand the child to the place to which the child had been remanded at the time of the child’s arrest subject to the same conditions as those which had been imposed on the child at that time. 10

*Remands to youth detention accommodation*

**91 First set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation**

- (1) For the purposes of section 84(4)(a), the first set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation is met in relation to a child if each of the following is met in relation to the child – 15
- (a) the age condition (see subsection (2)),
  - (b) the offence condition (see subsection (3)),
  - (c) the necessity condition (see subsection (4)), and
  - (d) the first or second legal representation condition (see subsections (5) and (6)). 20
- (2) The age condition is that the child has reached the age of twelve.
- (3) The offence condition is that the offence mentioned in section 84(1), or one or more of those offences – 25
- (a) is a violent or sexual offence, or
  - (b) is an offence punishable in the case of an adult with imprisonment for a term of 14 years or more.
- (4) The necessity condition is that the court is of the opinion, after considering all the options for the remand of the child, that only remanding the child to youth detention accommodation would be adequate – 30
- (a) to protect the public from death or serious personal injury (whether physical or psychological) occasioned by further offences committed by the child, or
  - (b) to prevent the commission by the child of imprisonable offences.
- (5) The first legal representation condition is that the child is legally represented before the court. 35
- (6) The second legal representation condition is that the child is not legally represented before the court and –
- (a) representation was provided to the child under Part 1 of this Act for the purposes of the proceedings, but was withdrawn – 40
    - (i) because of the child’s conduct, or
    - (ii) because it appeared that the child’s financial resources were such that the child was not eligible for such representation,

- (b) the child applied for such representation and the application was refused because it appeared that the child's financial resources were such that the child was not eligible for such representation, or
- (c) having been informed of the right to apply for such representation and having had the opportunity to do so, the child refused or failed to apply. 5

## **92 Second set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation**

- (1) For the purposes of section 84(4)(a), the second set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation is met in relation to a child if each of the following is met in relation to the child – 10
  - (a) the age condition (see subsection (2)),
  - (b) the sentencing condition (see subsection (3)),
  - (c) the offence condition (see subsection (4)),
  - (d) the first or second history condition or both (see subsections (5) and (6)), 15
  - (e) the necessity condition (see subsection (7)), and
  - (f) the first or second legal representation condition (see subsections (8) and (9)).
- (2) The age condition is that the child has reached the age of twelve.
- (3) The sentencing condition is that it appears to the court that there is a real prospect that the child will be sentenced to a custodial sentence for the offence mentioned in section 84(1) or one or more of those offences. 20
- (4) The offence condition is that the offence mentioned in section 84(1), or one or more of those offences, is an imprisonable offence.
- (5) The first history condition is that – 25
  - (a) the child has a recent history of absconding while remanded to local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation, and
  - (b) the offence mentioned in section 84(1), or one or more of those offences, is alleged to be or has been found to have been committed while the child was remanded to local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation. 30
- (6) The second history condition is that the offence or offences mentioned in section 84(1), together with any other imprisonable offences of which the child has been convicted in any proceedings, amount or would, if the child were convicted of that offence or those offences, amount to a recent history of committing imprisonable offences while – 35
  - (a) on bail,
  - (b) remanded to local authority accommodation, or
  - (c) remanded to youth detention accommodation.
- (7) The necessity condition is that the court is of the opinion, after considering all the options for the remand of the child, that only remanding the child to youth detention accommodation would be adequate – 40
  - (a) to protect the public from death or serious personal injury (whether physical or psychological) occasioned by further offences committed by the child, or 45
  - (b) to prevent the commission by the child of imprisonable offences.

- 
- (8) The first legal representation condition is that the child is legally represented before the court.
- (9) The second legal representation condition is that the child is not legally represented before the court and –
- (a) representation was provided to the child under Part 1 of this Act for the purposes of the proceedings, but was withdrawn –
    - (i) because of the child’s conduct, or
    - (ii) because it appeared that the child’s financial resources were such that the child was not eligible for such representation,
  - (b) the child applied for such representation and the application was refused because it appeared that the child’s financial resources were such that the child was not eligible for such representation, or
  - (c) having been informed of the right to apply for such representation and having had the opportunity to do so, the child refused or failed to apply.
- (10) In this Chapter “custodial sentence” means a sentence under –
- (a) section 90 of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (detention during Her Majesty’s pleasure on conviction of murder),
  - (b) section 91 of that Act (detention for specified period on conviction of certain serious offences),
  - (c) section 100 of that Act (detention and training order),
  - (d) section 226 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (detention for life or for public protection for certain serious offences), or
  - (e) section 228 of that Act (extended sentence of detention for violent or sexual offences).
- (11) References in this section to a child being remanded to local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation include a child being remanded to local authority accommodation under section 23 of the Children and Young Persons Act 1969.
- 93 First set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation: extradition cases**
- (1) For the purposes of section 84(4)(b), the first set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation in an extradition case is met in relation to a child if each of the following is met in relation to the child –
- (a) the age condition (see subsection (2)),
  - (b) the offence condition (see subsection (3)),
  - (c) the necessity condition (see subsection (4)), and
  - (d) the first or second legal representation condition (see subsections (5) and (6)).
- (2) The age condition is that the child has reached the age of twelve.
- (3) The offence condition is that the conduct constituting the offence to which the extradition proceedings relate, or one or more of those offences, would, if committed in the United Kingdom, constitute –
- (a) a violent or sexual offence, or
  - (b) an offence punishable in the case of an adult with imprisonment for a term of 14 years or more.

- 
- (4) The necessity condition is that the court is of the opinion, after considering all the options for the remand of the child, that only remanding the child to youth detention accommodation would be adequate –
- (a) to protect the public from death or serious personal injury (whether physical or psychological) occasioned by further offences committed by the child, or 5
  - (b) to prevent the commission by the child of imprisonable offences.
- (5) The first legal representation condition is that the child is legally represented before the court.
- (6) The second legal representation condition is that the child is not legally represented before the court and – 10
- (a) representation was provided to the child under Part 1 of this Act for the purposes of the proceedings, but was withdrawn –
    - (i) because of the child’s conduct, or
    - (ii) because it appeared that the child’s financial resources were such that the child was not eligible for such representation, 15
  - (b) the child applied for such representation and the application was refused because it appeared that the child’s financial resources were such that the child was not eligible for such representation, or
  - (c) having been informed of the right to apply for such representation and having had the opportunity to do so, the child refused or failed to apply. 20
- 94 Second set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation: extradition cases**
- (1) For the purposes of section 84(4)(b), the second set of conditions for a remand to youth detention accommodation in an extradition case is met in relation to a child if each of the following is met in relation to the child – 25
- (a) the age condition (see subsection (2)),
  - (b) the sentencing condition (see subsection (3)),
  - (c) the offence condition (see subsection (4)), 30
  - (d) the first or second history condition or both (see subsections (5) and (6)),
  - (e) the necessity condition (see subsection (7)), and
  - (f) the first or second legal representation condition (see subsections (8) and (9)). 35
- (2) The age condition is that the child has reached the age of twelve.
- (3) The sentencing condition is that it appears to the court that, if the child were convicted in the United Kingdom of an offence equivalent to the offence to which the extradition proceedings relate or one or more those offences, there would be a real prospect that the child would be sentenced to a custodial sentence for that offence or those offences. 40
- (4) The offence condition is that the offence to which the extradition proceedings relate, or one or more those offences, is an imprisonable offence.
- (5) The first history condition is that –
- (a) the child has a recent history of absconding while subject to a custodial remand, and 45



- (b) the offence to which the extradition proceedings relate, or one or more of those offences, is alleged to be or has been found to have been committed while the child was subject to a custodial remand.
- (6) The second history condition is that the offence or offences to which the extradition proceedings relate, together with any other imprisonable offences of which the child has been convicted, amount or would, if the child were convicted of that offence or those offences, amount to a recent history of committing imprisonable offences while on bail or subject to a custodial remand. 5
- (7) The necessity condition is that the court is of the opinion, after considering all the options for the remand of the child, that only remanding the child to youth detention accommodation would be adequate – 10
  - (a) to protect the public from death or serious personal injury (whether physical or psychological) occasioned by further offences committed by the child, or 15
  - (b) to prevent the commission by the child of imprisonable offences.
- (8) The first legal representation condition is that the child is legally represented before the court.
- (9) The second legal representation condition is that the child is not legally represented before the court and – 20
  - (a) representation was provided to the child under Part 1 of this Act for the purposes of the proceedings, but was withdrawn –
    - (i) because of the child’s conduct, or
    - (ii) because it appeared that the child’s financial resources were such that the child was not eligible for such representation, 25
  - (b) the child applied for such representation and the application was refused because it appeared that the child’s financial resources were such that the child was not eligible for such representation, or
  - (c) having been informed of the right to apply for such representation and having had the opportunity to do so, the child refused or failed to apply. 30

## 95 Remands to youth detention accommodation

- (1) A remand to youth detention accommodation is a remand to such accommodation of a kind listed in subsection (2) as the Secretary of State directs in the child’s case. 35
- (2) Those kinds of accommodation are –
  - (a) a secure children’s home,
  - (b) a secure training centre, and
  - (c) a young offender institution.
- (3) A child’s detention in one of those kinds of accommodation pursuant to a remand to youth detention accommodation is lawful. 40
- (4) Where a court remands a child to youth detention accommodation, the court must –
  - (a) state in open court that it is of the opinion mentioned in section 91(4), 92(7), 93(4) or 94(7) (as the case may be), and 45

- (b) explain to the child in open court and in ordinary language why it is of that opinion.
- (5) A magistrates’ court must ensure a reason that it gives under subsection (4)(b) –
- (a) is specified in the warrant of commitment, and 5
  - (b) is entered in the register.
- (6) Where a court remands a child to youth detention accommodation, the court must designate a local authority as the designated authority for the child for the purposes of –
- (a) subsection (8), 10
  - (b) regulations under section 96 (arrangements for remands), and
  - (c) section 97 (looked after child status).
- (7) That authority must be –
- (a) in the case of a child who is being looked after by a local authority, that authority, and 15
  - (b) in any other case, the local authority in whose area it appears to the court that the child habitually resides or the offence or one of the offences was committed.
- (8) Before giving a direction under subsection (1), the Secretary of State must consult the designated authority. 20
- (9) In this Chapter “secure children’s home” means –
- (a) accommodation in England which –
    - (i) is provided in a children’s home, within the meaning of the Care Standards Act 2000, in respect of which a person is registered under Part 2 of that Act, and 25
    - (ii) is approved by the Secretary of State for the purpose of restricting the liberty of children, or
  - (b) accommodation in Wales which is provided in a children’s home, within the meaning of the Care Standards Act 2000 –
    - (i) which provides accommodation for the purposes of restricting liberty, and 30
    - (ii) in respect of which a person is registered under Part 2 of that Act.

### *Supplementary*

- 96 Arrangements for remands 35**
- (1) The Secretary of State may make arrangements for or in connection with the accommodation in secure children’s homes of children remanded to youth detention accommodation.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the recovery from the designated authority by a person mentioned in subsection (3) of the costs of –
- (a) a child being subject to a remand to youth detention accommodation;
  - (b) the exercise of functions of the kind mentioned in –
    - (i) section 80(1)(a) to (e) of the Criminal Justice Act 1991 (escort functions) read with section 92(3) of that Act, or 45

- (ii) paragraph 1(1)(a) to (d) of Schedule 1 to the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 (escort functions),  
in relation to a child subject to such a remand.
- (3) Those persons are –
- (a) the Secretary of State; 5
  - (b) a person other than the Secretary of State by whom the accommodation pursuant to the remand to youth detention accommodation is provided or the functions are exercised (as the case may be).
- (4) Regulations under this section may –
- (a) make different provision for different cases; 10
  - (b) include supplementary, incidental, transitional, transitory or saving provision.
- (5) Regulations under this section are to be made by statutory instrument.
- (6) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament. 15
- (7) The Secretary of State may make payments to a local authority for the purpose of enabling the authority –
- (a) to exercise functions under section 85(4) (duty to receive and accommodate child remanded to local authority accommodation);
  - (b) to make payments pursuant to regulations under this section. 20
- 97 Looked after child status**
- (1) A child who is remanded to youth detention accommodation is to be treated as a child who is looked after by the designated authority.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide for any Act or instrument made under an Act that applies to a child looked after by a local authority to apply with modifications, or not to apply, in relation to a child who is to be treated as looked after by a designated authority by virtue of this Chapter. 25
- (3) Regulations under this section may –
- (a) make different provision for different cases;
  - (b) include supplementary, incidental, transitional, transitory or saving provision. 30
- (4) Regulations under this section are to be made by statutory instrument.
- (5) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (6) In this section “Act” includes an Act or Measure of the National Assembly for Wales. 35
- 98 Minor and consequential amendments**
- Schedule 12 (remands of children otherwise than on bail: minor and consequential amendments) has effect.

## 99 Interpretation of Chapter

- (1) In this Chapter –
- “child” has the meaning given by section 84(6);
  - “court” and “magistrates’ court” include a justice of the peace;
  - “custodial sentence” has the meaning given by section 92(10); 5
  - “the designated authority” –
    - (a) in relation to a child remanded to local authority accommodation, means the local authority that is designated by the court under section 85(2) to receive the child;
    - (b) in relation to a child remanded to youth detention accommodation, means the local authority that is designated by the court under section 95(6) as the designated authority for the child; 10
  - “electronic monitoring condition” has the meaning given by section 87(8);
  - “extradition proceedings” means proceedings under the Extradition Act 2003; 15
  - “imprisonable offence” has the meaning given by 87(8) (and see section 88(8));
  - “local authority” means –
    - (a) a county council; 20
    - (b) a county borough council;
    - (c) a district council for an area for which there is no county council;
    - (d) a London borough council;
    - (e) the Common Council of the City of London; 25
    - (f) the Council of the Isles of Scilly;
  - “secure children’s home” has the meaning given by section 95(9);
  - “sexual offence” has the meaning given by section 87(8);
  - “violent offence” has the meaning given by section 87(8);
  - “youth offending team” has the meaning given by section 87(8). 30
- (2) In this Chapter, references to the remand of a child, and related expressions, are to be construed in accordance with section 84(7) and (8).
- (3) In this Chapter, references to a remand to local authority accommodation, and related expressions, are to be construed in accordance with section 85(1).
- (4) Subsection (3) is subject to sections 87(9), 88(10) and 92(11) (references to remand to local authority accommodation to include such a remand under section 23 of the Children and Young Persons Act 1969). 35
- (5) In this Chapter, references to a child being subject to a custodial remand are to be construed in accordance with section 88(9).
- (6) In this Chapter, references to a remand to youth detention accommodation are to be construed in accordance with section 95(1). 40
- (7) In this Chapter, references to a child who is looked after by a local authority are to be construed in accordance with section 22 of the Children Act 1989.

## CHAPTER 4

### RELEASE ON LICENCE ETC

#### *Calculation of days to be served*

#### **100 Crediting of periods of remand in custody**

- (1) Omit section 240 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (court to direct that remand time be credited towards time served). 5
- (2) Before section 240A of that Act insert—  
**“240ZA Time remanded in custody to count as time served: terms of imprisonment and detention**
  - (1) This section applies where— 10
    - (a) an offender is serving a term of imprisonment in respect of an offence committed on or after 4th April 2005, and
    - (b) the offender has been remanded in custody (within the meaning given by section 242) in connection with the offence or a related offence. 15
  - (2) It is immaterial for that purpose whether, for all or part of the period during which the offender was remanded in custody, the offender was also remanded in custody in connection with other offences (but see subsection (5)).
  - (3) The number of days for which the offender was remanded in custody in connection with the offence or a related offence is to count as time served by the offender as part of the sentence. 20  
But this is subject to subsections (4) to (6).
  - (4) If, on any day on which the offender was remanded in custody, the offender was also detained in connection with any other matter, that day is not to count as time served. 25
  - (5) A day counts as time served—
    - (a) in relation to only one sentence, and
    - (b) only once in relation to that sentence.
  - (6) A day is not to count as time served as part of any period of 28 days served by the offender before automatic release (see section 255B(1)). 30
  - (7) For the purposes of this section a suspended sentence—
    - (a) is to be treated as a sentence of imprisonment when it takes effect under paragraph 8(2)(a) or (b) of Schedule 12, and
    - (b) is to be treated as being imposed by the order under which it takes effect. 35
  - (8) In this section “related offence” means an offence, other than the offence for which the sentence is imposed (“offence A”), with which the offender was charged and the charge for which was founded on the same facts or evidence as offence A. 40
  - (9) For the purposes of the references in subsections (3) and (5) to the term of imprisonment to which a person has been sentenced (that is to say,

- the reference to the offender’s “sentence”), consecutive terms and terms which are wholly or partly concurrent are to be treated as a single term if –
- (a) the sentences were passed on the same occasion, or
  - (b) where they were passed on different occasions, the person has not been released at any time during the period beginning with the first and ending with the last of those occasions. 5
- (10) The reference in subsection (4) to detention in connection with any other matter does not include remand in custody in connection with another offence but includes – 10
- (a) detention pursuant to any custodial sentence;
  - (b) committal in default of payment of any sum of money;
  - (c) committal for want of sufficient distress to satisfy any sum of money;
  - (d) committal for failure to do or abstain from doing anything required to be done or left undone. 15
- (11) Where an offence is found to have been committed over a period of two or more days, or at some time during a period of two or more days, it is to be taken for the purposes of subsection (1) to have been committed on the last of those days. 20
- (12) This section applies to –
- (a) a determinate sentence of detention under section 91 of the Sentencing Act or section 228 of this Act, or
  - (b) a sentence of detention in a young offender institution under section 96 of the Sentencing Act or section 227 of this Act, 25
- as it applies to an equivalent sentence of imprisonment.”

### **101 Crediting of periods of remand on bail**

- (1) Section 240A of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (crediting periods of remand on bail: terms of imprisonment and detention) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), for “subsection (4)” substitute “subsections (3A) and (3B)”. 30
- (3) For subsections (3) to (7) substitute –
- “(3) The credit period is calculated by taking the following steps.
- Step 1*  
Add –
- (a) the day on which the offender’s bail was first subject to relevant conditions (and for this purpose a condition is not prevented from being a relevant condition by the fact that it does not apply for the whole of the day in question), and 35
  - (b) the number of other days on which the offender’s bail was subject to those conditions (but exclude the last of those days if the offender spends the last part of it in custody). 40
- Step 2*  
Deduct the number of days on which the offender, whilst on bail subject to the relevant conditions, was also –

- (a) subject to any requirement imposed for the purpose of securing the electronic monitoring of the offender’s compliance with a curfew requirement, or
  - (b) on temporary release under rules made under section 47 of the Prison Act 1952. 5
- Step 3  
From the remainder, deduct the number of days during that remainder on which the offender has broken either or both of the relevant conditions.
- Step 4 10  
Divide the result by 2.
- Step 5  
If necessary, round up to the nearest whole number.
- (3A) A day of the credit period counts as time served – 15
  - (a) in relation to only one sentence, and
  - (b) only once in relation to that sentence.
- (3B) A day of the credit period is not to count as time served as part of any period of 28 days served by the offender before automatic release (see section 255B(1)).”
- (4) In subsection (8) – 20
  - (a) omit “or (5)”;
  - (b) for paragraph (b) substitute –
    - “(b) the number of days (if any) which it deducted under each of steps 2 and 3.”
- (5) Omit subsections (9) and (10). 25
- (6) In subsection (11) –
  - (a) for “Subsections (7) to (10) of section 240” substitute “Subsections (7) to (9), (11) and (12) of section 240ZA”;
  - (b) in paragraph (b), for “in subsection (8) the reference to subsection (3) of section 240 is” substitute “in subsection (9) the references to subsections (3) and (5) of section 240ZA are”. 30
- (7) In subsection (12) –
  - (a) before the definition of “electronic monitoring condition” insert –
    - ““curfew requirement” means a requirement (however described) to remain at one or more specified places for a specified number of hours in any given day, provided that the requirement is imposed by a court or the Secretary of State and arises as a result of a conviction;”;
  - (b) omit the definition of “related offence” and the “and” preceding it. 35
- (8) In the heading of the section, for “Crediting periods of remand on bail” substitute “Time remanded on bail to count towards time served”. 40

## 102 Amendments consequential on sections 100 and 101

- (1) The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 237(1C) (meaning of “fixed-term prisoner”) –
  - (a) for “section 240” substitute “section 240ZA”; 45

- (b) after “Armed Forces Act 2006)” insert “or section 240A”.
- (3) Section 241 (effect of direction under section 240 or 240A) is amended as follows.
- (4) In subsection (1) –
- (a) for “to whom a direction under section 240 or 240A relates” substitute “to whom section 240ZA applies or a direction under section 240A relates”;
- (b) for “specified in the direction” substitute “specified in section 240ZA or in the direction under section 240A”.
- (5) In subsection (1A), for “a direction under section 240 or 240A includes a direction under” substitute “section 240ZA includes”.
- (6) In the heading, for “direction under section 240 or 240A” substitute “section 240ZA or direction under section 240A”.
- (7) In section 242 (interpretation of sections 240 to 241), in subsections (1) and (2) and in the heading, for “sections 240” substitute “sections 240ZA”.
- (8) For section 243(2) (persons extradited to the United Kingdom) substitute –
- “(2) In the case of an extradited prisoner, the court must specify in open court the number of days for which the prisoner was kept in custody while awaiting extradition.
- (2A) Section 240ZA applies to days specified under subsection (2) as if they were days for which the prisoner was remanded in custody in connection with the offence or a related offence.”
- (9) In section 246 (power to release prisoners early) –
- (a) in subsection (4)(i), for “to whom a direction under section 240 or 240A relates” substitute “to whom section 240ZA applies or a direction under section 240A relates”;
- (b) in subsection (4A)(b), for “a direction under section 240 includes a direction under” substitute “section 240ZA includes”.
- (10) In section 269 (determination of minimum term in relation to mandatory life sentence) –
- (a) in subsection (3)(b), for the words from “any direction which it would have given” to “certain types of condition)” substitute “section 240ZA (crediting periods of remand in custody) or of any direction which it would have given under section 240A (crediting periods of remand on certain types of bail)”;
- (b) after that subsection insert –
- “(3A) The reference in subsection (3)(b) to section 240ZA includes section 246 of the Armed Forces Act 2006 (crediting periods in service custody).”
- (11) In section 330(5) (rules to be subject to affirmative resolution) –
- (a) after paragraph (b) insert “or”, and
- (b) omit paragraph (d) and the “or” preceding it.
- (12) Schedule 13 (crediting of time in custody: Armed Forces amendments) has effect.



- (13) In consequence of the amendments made by this section, in the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 omit –
- (a) section 21(2), (5) and (7);
  - (b) section 22(2) and (3).

*Release*

5

**103 Prisoners serving less than 12 months**

- (1) After section 243 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 insert –

*“Unconditional release*

**243A Duty to release prisoners serving less than 12 months**

- (1) This section applies to a fixed-term prisoner who is serving a sentence which is – 10
- (a) for a term of less than twelve months, and
  - (b) imposed in respect of an offence committed on or after 4th April 2005.
- (2) As soon as a prisoner to whom this section applies has served the requisite custodial period for the purposes of this section, it is the duty of the Secretary of State to release that person unconditionally. 15
- (3) For the purposes of this section “the requisite custodial period” is –
- (a) in relation to a person serving a sentence of imprisonment for a term of less than twelve months or a determinate sentence of detention under section 91 or 96 of the Sentencing Act for such a term, one-half of the sentence, and 20
  - (b) in relation to a person serving two or more concurrent or consecutive sentences, the period determined under sections 263(2) and 264(2).” 25
- (2) Schedule 14 (amendments consequential on subsection (1)) has effect.

**104 Restrictions on early release subject to curfew**

- (1) In section 246 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (power to release prisoners on licence), subsection (4) is amended as follows.
- (2) After paragraph (a) insert – 30
- “(aa) the sentence is for a term of 4 years or more,”.
- (3) In paragraph (g) –
- (a) for “during the currency of the sentence” substitute “at any time”, and
  - (b) at the end insert “(and the revocation has not been cancelled under section 255(3))”. 35
- (4) Omit the “or” at the end of paragraph (h) and after that paragraph insert –
- “(ha) the prisoner has at any time been returned to prison under section 40 of the Criminal Justice Act 1991 or section 116 of the Sentencing Act, or”.

(5)	After subsection (4) of that section insert –	
	“(4ZA) Where subsection (4)(aa) applies to a prisoner who is serving two or more terms of imprisonment, the reference to the term of the sentence is –	
	(a) if the terms are partly concurrent, a reference to the period which begins when the first term begins and ends when the last term ends;	5
	(b) if the terms are to be served consecutively, a reference to the aggregate of the terms.”	
(6)	In subsection (6) of that section, at the end insert –	10
	““term of imprisonment” includes a determinate sentence of detention under section 91 of the Sentencing Act or under section 228 of this Act or a sentence of detention in a young offender institution under section 96 of the Sentencing Act or under section 227 of this Act.”	
	<i>Further release after recall</i>	15
<b>105</b>	<b>Cancellation of revocation of licence</b>	
(1)	After section 254(2) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (representations by person recalled) insert –	
	“(2A) The Secretary of State, after considering any representations under subsection (2)(a) or any other matters, may cancel a revocation under this section.	20
	(2B) The Secretary of State may cancel a revocation under subsection (2A) only if satisfied that the person recalled has complied with all the conditions specified in the licence.	
	(2C) Where the revocation of a person’s licence is cancelled under subsection (2A), the person is to be treated as if the recall under subsection (1) had not happened.”	25
(2)	In section 255(3) of that Act (cancellation of revocation under section 255), for “subsection (2)(b)” substitute “subsection (2)(a)”.	
<b>106</b>	<b>Further release after recall</b>	30
(1)	For sections 255A to 255D of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (further release after recall) substitute –	
	<i>“Further release after recall</i>	
	<b>255A Further release after recall: introductory</b>	
(1)	This section applies for the purpose of identifying which of sections 255B and 255C governs the further release of a person who has been recalled under section 254.	35
(2)	The Secretary of State must, on recalling a person other than an extended sentence prisoner, consider whether the person is suitable for automatic release.	40

- (3) For this purpose “automatic release” means release at the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the person returns to custody.
  - (4) A person is suitable for automatic release only if the Secretary of State is satisfied that the person will not present a risk of serious harm to members of the public if released at the end of that period. 5
  - (5) The person must be dealt with—
    - (a) in accordance with section 255B if suitable for automatic release;
    - (b) in accordance with section 255C otherwise.
  - (6) For the purposes of this section, a person returns to custody when that person, having been recalled, is detained (whether or not in prison) in pursuance of the sentence. 10
  - (7) An “extended sentence prisoner” is a prisoner serving an extended sentence imposed under—
    - (a) section 227 or 228 of this Act, or 15
    - (b) section 85 of the Sentencing Act;and paragraph (b) includes (in accordance with paragraph 1(3) of Schedule 11 to the Sentencing Act) a reference to section 58 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998.
- 255B Automatic release** 20
- (1) A prisoner who is suitable for automatic release (“P”) must—
    - (a) on return to prison, be informed that he or she will be released under this section (subject to subsections (8) and (9)), and
    - (b) at the end of the 28 day period mentioned in section 255A(3), be released by the Secretary of State on licence under this Chapter (unless P is released before that date under subsection (2) or (5)). 25
  - (2) The Secretary of State may, at any time after P is returned to prison, release P again on licence under this Chapter.
  - (3) The Secretary of State must not release P under subsection (2) unless the Secretary of State is satisfied that it is not necessary for the protection of the public that P should remain in prison until the end of the period mentioned in subsection (1)(b). 30
  - (4) If P makes representations under section 254(2) before the end of that period, the Secretary of State must refer P’s case to the Board on the making of those representations. 35
  - (5) Where on a reference under subsection (4) the Board directs P’s immediate release on licence under this Chapter, the Secretary of State must give effect to the direction.
  - (6) Subsection (7) applies if P is recalled before the date on which P would (but for the earlier release) have served the requisite custodial period for the purposes of section 243A or (as the case may be) section 244. 40
  - (7) Where this subsection applies—
    - (a) if P is released under this section before that date, P’s licence must include a curfew condition complying with section 253, and 45

- 
- (b) P is not to be so released (despite subsections (1)(b) and (5)) unless the Secretary of State is satisfied that arrangements are in place to enable that condition to be complied with.
- (8) Subsection (9) applies if, after P has been informed that he or she will be released under this section, the Secretary of State receives further information about P (whether or not relating to any time before P was recalled). 5
- (9) If the Secretary of State determines, having regard to that and any other relevant information, that P is not suitable for automatic release – 10
- (a) the Secretary of State must inform P that he or she will not be released under this section, and
- (b) section 255C applies to P as if the Secretary of State had determined, on P’s recall, that P was not suitable for automatic release.
- 255C Extended sentence prisoners and those not suitable for automatic release** 15
- (1) This section applies to a prisoner (“P”) who –
- (a) is an extended sentence prisoner, or
- (b) is not considered to be suitable for automatic release.
- (2) The Secretary of State may, at any time after P is returned to prison, release P again on licence under this Chapter. 20
- (3) The Secretary of State must not release P under subsection (2) unless the Secretary of State is satisfied that it is not necessary for the protection of the public that P should remain in prison.
- (4) The Secretary of State must refer P’s case to the Board – 25
- (a) if P makes representations under section 254(2) before the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which P returns to custody, on the making of those representations, or
- (b) if, at the end of that period, P has not been released under subsection (2) and has not made such representations, at that time. 30
- (5) Where on a reference under subsection (4) the Board directs P’s immediate release on licence under this Chapter, the Secretary of State must give effect to the direction.
- (6) Subsection (7) applies if P is recalled before the date on which P would (but for the earlier release) have served the requisite custodial period for the purposes of section 243A or (as the case may be) section 244. 35
- (7) Where this subsection applies –
- (a) if P is released under this section before that date, P’s licence must include a curfew condition complying with section 253, and 40
- (b) P is not to be so released (despite subsection (5)) unless the Secretary of State is satisfied that arrangements are in place to enable that condition to be complied with.

- (8) For the purposes of this section, P returns to custody when P, having been recalled, is detained (whether or not in prison) in pursuance of the sentence.”
- (2) After section 244(1) of that Act (duty to release certain prisoners on licence at half-way point) insert – 5  
“(1A) Subsection (1) does not apply if the prisoner has been released on licence under section 246 and recalled under section 254 (provision for the release of such persons being made by sections 255B and 255C).”
- (3) In the heading of section 253 of that Act (curfew conditions) after “section 246” insert “, 255B or 255C”. 10
- (4) In section 256(1) of that Act (review by the Board), for “section 255B(4), 255C(4) or 255D(1)” substitute “section 255B(4) or 255C(4)”. 10
- (5) In consequence of the amendments made by this section, omit section 29(2) and (3) of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008.

*Other provisions about release* 15

## 107 Supervision of young offenders after release

After section 256A of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 insert –

*“Supervision of young offenders after release*

### 256B Supervision of young offenders after release

- (1) This section applies where a person (“the offender”) is released under this Chapter from one of the following terms if the term is for less than 12 months – 20
- (a) a term of detention in a young offender institution;
  - (b) a term of detention under section 91 of the Sentencing Act;
  - (c) a term of detention under section 209 of the Armed Forces Act 2006. 25
- (2) The offender is to be under the supervision of – 30
- (a) an officer of a provider of probation services,
  - (b) a social worker of a local authority, or
  - (c) if the offender is under the age of 18 years at the date of release, a member of the youth offending team.
- (3) Where the supervision is to be provided by an officer of a provider of probation services, the officer must be an officer acting in the local justice area in which the offender resides for the time being.
- (4) Where the supervision is to be provided by – 35
- (a) a social worker of a local authority, or
  - (b) a member of a youth offending team,
- the social worker or member must be a social worker of, or a member of a youth offending team established by, the local authority within whose area the offender resides for the time being. 40

- (5) The supervision period begins on the offender’s release and ends three months later (whether or not the offender is detained under section 256C or otherwise during that period).
- (6) During the supervision period, the offender must comply with such requirements, if any, as may for the time being be specified in a notice from the Secretary of State. 5
- (7) The requirements that may be specified in a notice under subsection (6) include—
- (a) requirements for securing the electronic monitoring of the offender’s compliance with any other requirements specified in the notice; 10
- (b) requirements for securing the electronic monitoring of the offender’s whereabouts (otherwise than for the purpose of securing compliance with requirements specified in the notice);
- (c) in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (8), requirements to provide, when instructed to do so by an officer of a provider of probation services or a person authorised by the Secretary of State, any sample mentioned in the instruction for the purpose of ascertaining whether the offender has any specified Class A drug in his or her body. 15  
20
- (8) The circumstances referred to in subsection (7)(c) are that—
- (a) the offender has attained the age of 18 years;
- (b) the offender’s term of detention was imposed for a trigger offence; and
- (c) the requirements to provide samples are being imposed for the purpose of determining whether the offender is complying with any other requirements specified in the notice. 25
- (9) The function of giving such an instruction as is mentioned in subsection (7)(c) must be exercised in accordance with guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State; and the Secretary of State may make rules about the requirements that may be imposed by virtue of subsection (7) and the provision of samples in pursuance of such an instruction. 30
- (10) In this section—
- “specified Class A drug” has the same meaning as in Part 3 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000; 35
- “trigger offence”—
- (a) has the same meaning as in that Part, unless paragraph (b) applies;
- (b) if the offender’s term of detention was imposed for an offence under section 42 of the Armed Forces Act 2006 (criminal conduct), means such an offence as respects which the corresponding offence under the law of England and Wales is a trigger offence within the meaning of that Part. 40  
45

### **256C Breach of supervision requirements**

- (1) Where an offender is under supervision under section 256B and it appears on information to a justice of the peace that the offender has

- failed to comply with requirements under section 256B(6), the justice may –
- (a) issue a summons requiring the offender to appear at the place and time specified in the summons, or
  - (b) if the information is in writing and on oath, issue a warrant for the offender’s arrest. 5
- (2) Any summons or warrant issued under this section must direct the offender to appear or be brought –
- (a) before a court acting for the local justice area in which the offender resides, or 10
  - (b) if it is not known where the offender resides, before a court acting for same local justice area as the justice who issued the summons or warrant.
- (3) Where the offender does not appear in answer to a summons issued under subsection (1)(a), the court may issue a warrant for the offender’s arrest. 15
- (4) If it is proved to the satisfaction of the court that the offender has failed to comply with requirements under section 256B(6), the court may –
- (a) order the offender to be detained, in prison or such youth detention accommodation as the Secretary of State may determine, for such period, not exceeding 30 days, as the court may specify, or 20
  - (b) impose on the offender a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.
- (5) An offender detained in pursuance of an order under subsection (4)(a) is to be regarded as being in legal custody. 25
- (6) A fine imposed under subsection (4)(b) is to be treated, for the purposes of any enactment, as being a sum adjudged to be paid by a conviction.
- (7) An offender may appeal to the Crown Court against any order made under subsection (4)(a) or (b). 30
- (8) In this section “court” means –
- (a) if the offender has attained the age of 18 years at the date of release, a magistrates’ court other than a youth court;
  - (b) if the offender is under the age of 18 years at the date of release, a youth court.” 35

### 108 Miscellaneous amendments relating to release and recall

- (1) The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit section 248(2) (Secretary of State to consult Board before releasing extended sentence prisoner on compassionate grounds).
- (3) In section 256(1) (review by the Board) – 40
  - (a) for “recommend” substitute “direct”;
  - (b) for “recommendation” substitute “direction”.
- (4) In section 256A (further review) –
  - (a) in subsection (4)(a), for “recommending” substitute “directing”;

- 
- (b) in subsection (4)(c), for “recommendation” substitute “direction”;
- (c) in subsection (5), for “recommendation” (in both places) substitute “direction”.
- (5) In section 260(5) (duties and powers remaining exercisable in relation to persons removed from prison), after “244” insert “, 247”. 5
- (6) In section 261(5) (re-entry to UK of offender removed early: re-release), after “sentence expiry date,” insert “–
- (a) if the person is serving an extended sentence imposed under section 227 or 228, section 247 has effect in relation to that person as if the reference to one-half of the appropriate custodial term were a reference to the further custodial period; 10
- (b) in any other case,”.
- (7) In section 261(6) (re-entry to UK of offender removed early: definitions), in the definition of “requisite custodial period”, after the words “requisite custodial period” insert “–
- (a) in relation to a prisoner serving an extended sentence imposed under section 227 or 228, means one-half of the appropriate custodial term (determined by the court under that section);
- (b) in any other case,”. 15
- (8) In section 263(2)(b) (concurrent terms: authority to release), for “section 244” substitute “section 246”.
- (9) In section 263(2)(c) (concurrent terms: licence period), for the words from “for so long, and subject to such conditions, as is” substitute “–
- (i) until the last date on which the offender is required to be on licence in respect of any of the terms, and 25
- (ii) subject to such conditions as are”.
- 109 Repeal of uncommenced provisions**
- (1) This section repeals certain provisions which have not been commenced.
- (2) Omit section 266 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (which amends section 64 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 in relation to drug testing requirements). 30
- (3) Omit section 34 of the Police and Justice Act 2006 (which makes amendments of Part 12 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 relating to imprisonment for bail offences). 35
- (4) Omit the following provisions of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (which relate to the early release of persons with a settled intention of residing permanently outside the UK)–
- (a) section 33(2), (4), (7) and (8) (amendments of the Criminal Justice Act 1991); 40
- (b) section 34(2), (4)(b), (7) and (10) (amendments of the Criminal Justice Act 2003).
- (5) In Schedule 8 to the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (minor and consequential amendments) omit–



- (a) paragraph 86 (amendments of section 41 of the Criminal Justice Act 1991);
- (b) paragraph 90 (amendment of section 47 of that Act).

*Life sentence prisoners*

**110 Removal of prisoners from the United Kingdom** 5

After section 32 of the Crime (Sentences) Act 1997 insert –

*“Persons liable to removal from the United Kingdom*

**32A Removal of prisoners liable to removal from United Kingdom**

- (1) Where P –
  - (a) is a life prisoner in respect of whom a minimum term order has been made, and 10
  - (b) is liable to removal from the United Kingdom, the Secretary of State may remove P from prison under this section at any time after P has served the relevant part of the sentence (whether or not the Parole Board has directed P’s release under section 28). 15
- (2) But if P is serving two or more life sentences –
  - (a) this section does not apply to P unless a minimum term order has been made in respect of each of those sentences; and
  - (b) the Secretary of State may not remove P from prison under this section until P has served the relevant part of each of them. 20
- (3) If P is removed from prison under this section –
  - (a) P is so removed only for the purpose of enabling the Secretary of State to remove P from the United Kingdom under powers conferred by –
    - (i) Schedule 2 or 3 to the Immigration Act 1971, or 25
    - (ii) section 10 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999, and
  - (b) so long as remaining in the United Kingdom, P remains liable to be detained in pursuance of the sentence.
- (4) So long as P, having been removed from prison under this section, remains in the United Kingdom but has not been returned to prison, any duty or power of the Secretary of State under section 28 or 30 is exercisable in relation to P as if P were in prison. 30
- (5) In this section –
  - “liable to removal from the United Kingdom” has the meaning given by section 259 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003; 35
  - “the relevant part” has the meaning given by section 28.

**32B Re-entry into United Kingdom of offender removed from prison**

- (1) This section applies if P, having been removed from prison under section 32A, is removed from the United Kingdom.
- (2) If P enters the United Kingdom – 40
  - (a) P is liable to be detained in pursuance of the sentence from the time of P’s entry into the United Kingdom;

- (b) if no direction was given by the Parole Board under subsection (5) of section 28 before P’s removal from prison, that section applies to P;
- (c) if such a direction was given before that removal, P is to be treated as if P had been recalled to prison under section 32. 5
- (3) A person who is liable to be detained by virtue of subsection (2)(a) is, if at large, to be taken for the purposes of section 49 of the Prison Act 1952 (persons unlawfully at large) to be unlawfully at large.
- (4) Subsection (2)(a) does not prevent P’s further removal from the United Kingdom.” 10

*Application and transitional provision*

**111 Application and transitional etc provision**

Schedule 15 (provision about the application of sections 100 to 110 and transitional and transitory provision) has effect.

*Restatement of earlier enactments and transitional provisions* 15

**112 Power to restate earlier enactments and existing transitional provisions**

- (1) This section applies to –
  - (a) an order under section 336(3) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 which brings into force any provision of Chapter 6 of Part 12 of that Act (“the 2003 Act”), 20
  - (b) an order under that section which brings into force the repeal of any provision of Part 2 of the Criminal Justice Act 1991, and
  - (c) an order under section 153(7) of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (“the 2008 Act”) which brings into force any provision amending or repealing any provision of Chapter 6 of Part 12 of the 2003 Act. 25
- (2) Such an order may –
  - (a) amend or revoke any transitory, transitional or saving provision made by a previous order;
  - (b) restate (with or without amendment) any provision so revoked. 30
- (3) The powers conferred by –
  - (a) section 330(4) of the 2003 Act and section 153(8)(b) of the 2008 Act (power to make transitory, transitional and saving provision etc), and
  - (b) subsection (2)(b),
 may be exercised by amending or repealing any provision of Chapter 6 of Part 12 of the 2003 Act. 35
- (4) Where an order brings into force the repeal of any provision of Part 2 of the Criminal Justice Act 1991, the power conferred by section 330(4) of the 2003 Act (including that power as exercised in accordance with subsection (3) above) may be exercised so as to make provision identical in effect to the provision repealed. 40

- (5) An order containing provision mentioned in subsection (2), (3) or (4) may only be made if a draft of the statutory instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (6) In the case of an order under section 336(3) of the 2003 Act, subsection (5) applies in place of section 330(6) of that Act.

5

## CHAPTER 5

### DANGEROUS OFFENDERS

#### 113 Abolition of certain sentences for dangerous offenders

In Chapter 5 of Part 12 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (sentencing: dangerous offenders) omit –

10

- (a) section 225(3) to (4) (imprisonment for public protection for serious offences),
- (b) section 226(3) to (4) (detention for public protection for serious offences),
- (c) section 227 (extended sentence for certain violent or sexual offences: persons 18 or over), and
- (d) section 228 (extended sentence for certain violent or sexual offences: persons under 18).

15

#### 114 Life sentence for second listed offence

- (1) In Chapter 5 of Part 12 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (sentencing: dangerous offenders), after section 224 insert –

20

##### “224A Life sentence for second listed offence

- (1) This section applies where –
- (a) a person aged 18 or over is convicted of an offence listed in Part 1 of Schedule 15B,
- (b) the offence was committed after this section comes into force, and
- (c) the seriousness condition and the previous offence condition are met.
- (2) The court must impose a sentence of imprisonment for life unless the court is of the opinion that there are particular circumstances which –
- (a) relate to the offence, to the previous offence referred to in subsection (4) or to the offender, and
- (b) would make it unjust to do so in all the circumstances.
- (3) The seriousness condition is that the court considers that the seriousness of the offence, or of the offence and one or more offences associated with it, is such as to justify the imposition of a sentence of imprisonment for 10 years or more, disregarding any extension period imposed under section 226A.
- (4) The previous offence condition is that –
- (a) at the time the offence was committed, the offender had been convicted of an offence listed in Schedule 15B (“the previous offence”), and

25

30

35

40

- 
- (b) a relevant life sentence or a relevant sentence of imprisonment or detention for a determinate period was imposed on the offender for the previous offence.
- (5) A life sentence is relevant for the purposes of subsection (4)(b) if –
- (a) the offender was not eligible for release during the first 5 years of the sentence, or 5
- (b) the offender would not have been eligible for release during that period but for the reduction of the period of ineligibility to take account of a relevant pre-sentence period.
- (6) An extended sentence imposed under this Act (including one imposed as a result of the Armed Forces Act 2006) is relevant for the purposes of subsection (4)(b) if the appropriate custodial term imposed was 10 years or more. 10
- (7) Any other extended sentence is relevant for the purposes of subsection (4)(b) if the custodial term imposed was 10 years or more. 15
- (8) Any other sentence of imprisonment or detention for a determinate period is relevant for the purposes of subsection (4)(b) if it was for a period of 10 years or more.
- (9) An extended sentence or other sentence of imprisonment or detention is also relevant if it would have been relevant under subsection (7) or (8) but for the reduction of the sentence, or any part of the sentence, to take account of a relevant pre-sentence period. 20
- (10) For the purposes of subsections (4) to (9) –
- “extended sentence” means –
- (a) a sentence imposed under section 85 of the Sentencing Act or under section 226A, 226B, 227 or 228 of this Act (including one imposed as a result of section 220 or 222 of the Armed Forces Act 2006), or 25
- (b) an equivalent sentence imposed under the law of Scotland, Northern Ireland or a member State (other than the United Kingdom); 30
- “life sentence” means –
- (a) a life sentence as defined in section 34 of the Crime (Sentences) Act 1997, or
- (b) an equivalent sentence imposed under the law of Scotland, Northern Ireland or a member State (other than the United Kingdom); 35
- “relevant pre-sentence period”, in relation to the previous offence referred to in subsection (4), means any period which the offender spent in custody or on bail before the sentence for that offence was imposed; 40
- “sentence of imprisonment or detention” includes any sentence of a period in custody (however expressed).
- (11) An offence the sentence for which is imposed under this section is not to be regarded as an offence the sentence for which is fixed by law.” 45
- (2) Schedule 16 (new Schedule 15B to the Criminal Justice Act 2003) has effect.

- (3) Schedule 17 (life sentence for second listed offence: consequential and transitory provision) has effect.

## 115 New extended sentences

- (1) In Chapter 5 of Part 12 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (sentencing: dangerous offenders), after section 226 and the italic heading “Extended sentences” insert – 5

### “226A Extended sentence for certain violent or sexual offences: persons 18 or over

- (1) This section applies where –
- (a) a person aged 18 or over is convicted of a specified offence (whether the offence was committed before or after this section comes into force), 10
  - (b) the court considers that there is a significant risk to members of the public of serious harm occasioned by the commission by the offender of further specified offences, 15
  - (c) the court is not required by section 224A or 225(2) to impose a sentence of imprisonment for life, and
  - (d) condition A or B is met.
- (2) Condition A is that, at the time the offence was committed, the offender had been convicted of an offence listed in Schedule 15B. 20
- (3) Condition B is that, if the court were to impose an extended sentence of imprisonment, the term that it would specify as the appropriate custodial term would be at least 4 years.
- (4) The court may impose an extended sentence of imprisonment on the offender. 25
- (5) An extended sentence of imprisonment is a sentence of imprisonment the term of which is equal to the aggregate of –
- (a) the appropriate custodial term, and
  - (b) a further period (the “extension period”) for which the offender is to be subject to a licence. 30
- (6) The appropriate custodial term is the term of imprisonment that would (apart from this section) be imposed in compliance with section 153(2).
- (7) The extension period must be a period of such length as the court considers necessary for the purpose of protecting members of the public from serious harm occasioned by the commission by the offender of further specified offences, subject to subsections (8) and (9). 35
- (8) The extension period must not exceed –
- (a) 5 years in the case of a specified violent offence, and
  - (b) 8 years in the case of a specified sexual offence.
- (9) The term of an extended sentence of imprisonment imposed under this section in respect of an offence must not exceed the term that, at the time the offence was committed, was the maximum term permitted for the offence. 40

**226B Extended sentence for certain violent or sexual offences: persons under 18**

- (1) This section applies where –
- (a) a person aged under 18 is convicted of a specified offence (whether the offence was committed before or after this section comes into force), 5
  - (b) the court considers that there is a significant risk to members of the public of serious harm occasioned by the commission by the offender of further specified offences,
  - (c) the court is not required by section 226(2) to impose a sentence of detention for life under section 91 of the Sentencing Act, and 10
  - (d) if the court were to impose an extended sentence of detention, the term that it would specify as the appropriate custodial term would be at least 4 years.
- (2) The court may impose an extended sentence of detention on the offender. 15
- (3) An extended sentence of detention is a sentence of detention the term of which is equal to the aggregate of –
- (a) the appropriate custodial term, and
  - (b) a further period (the “extension period”) for which the offender is to be subject to a licence. 20
- (4) The appropriate custodial term is the term of detention that would (apart from this section) be imposed in compliance with section 153(2).
- (5) The extension period must be a period of such length as the court considers necessary for the purpose of protecting members of the public from serious harm occasioned by the commission by the offender of further specified offences, subject to subsections (6) and (7). 25
- (6) The extension period must not exceed –
- (a) 5 years in the case of a specified violent offence, and
  - (b) 8 years in the case of a specified sexual offence. 30
- (7) The term of an extended sentence of detention imposed under this section in respect of an offence may not exceed the term that, at the time the offence was committed, was the maximum term of imprisonment permitted for the offence in the case of a person aged 18 or over.”
- (2) Schedule 18 (new extended sentences: consequential and transitory provision) has effect. 35

**116 New extended sentences: release on licence etc**

- (1) Chapter 6 of Part 12 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (sentencing: release and recall) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 244(1) (duty to release prisoners on licence) (as amended by Schedule 14 to this Act) after “243A” insert “, 246A”. 40

(3) After section 246 insert –

**“246A Release on licence of prisoners serving extended sentence under section 226A or 226B**

- (1) This section applies to a prisoner (“P”) who is serving an extended sentence imposed under section 226A or 226B. 5
- (2) It is the duty of the Secretary of State to release P on licence under this section as soon as P has served the requisite custodial period for the purposes of this section unless either or both of the following conditions are met –
- (a) the appropriate custodial term is 10 years or more; 10
- (b) the sentence was imposed in respect of an offence listed in Part 1 of Schedule 15B or in respect of offences that include one or more offences listed in that Part of that Schedule.
- (3) If either or both of those conditions are met, it is the duty of the Secretary of State to release P on licence in accordance with subsections (4) to (7). 15
- (4) The Secretary of State must refer P’s case to the Board –
- (a) as soon as P has served the requisite custodial period, and
- (b) where there has been a previous reference of P’s case to the Board under this subsection and the Board did not direct P’s release, not later than the second anniversary of the disposal of that reference. 20
- (5) It is the duty of the Secretary of State to release P on licence under this section as soon as –
- (a) P has served the requisite custodial period, and 25
- (b) the Board has directed P’s release under this section.
- (6) The Board must not give a direction under subsection (5) unless –
- (a) the Secretary of State has referred P’s case to the Board, and
- (b) the Board is satisfied that it is no longer necessary for the protection of the public that P should be confined. 30
- (7) It is the duty of the Secretary of State to release P on licence under this section as soon as P has served the appropriate custodial term, unless P has previously been released on licence under this section and recalled under section 254 (provision for the release of such persons being made by section 255C). 35
- (8) For the purposes of this section –
- “appropriate custodial term” means the term determined as such by the court under section 226A or 226B (as appropriate);
- “the requisite custodial period” means –
- (a) in relation to a person serving one sentence, two-thirds of the appropriate custodial term, and 40
- (b) in relation to a person serving two or more concurrent or consecutive sentences, the period determined under sections 263(2) and 264(2).”
- (4) Schedule 19 (release of new extended sentence prisoners: consequential provision) has effect. 45

### 117 Power to change test for release on licence of certain prisoners

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide that, following a referral by the Secretary of State of the case of an IPP prisoner or an extended sentence prisoner, the Parole Board –
- (a) must direct the prisoner’s release if it is satisfied that conditions specified in the order are met, or 5
  - (b) must do so unless it is satisfied that conditions specified in the order are met.
- (2) An order under this section may –
- (a) amend section 28 of the Crime (Sentences) Act 1997 (duty to release IPP prisoners and others), 10
  - (b) amend section 246A of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (release on licence of extended sentence prisoners),
  - (c) make provision in relation to any person whose case is disposed of by the Parole Board on or after the day on which the regulations come into force (even if the Secretary of State referred that person’s case to the Board before that day), 15
  - (d) make different provision in relation to IPP prisoners and extended sentence prisoners, and
  - (e) include consequential provision. 20
- (3) An order under this section is to be made by statutory instrument.
- (4) A statutory instrument containing an order under this section may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.
- (5) In this section – 25
- “extended sentence prisoner” means a prisoner who is serving a sentence under section 226A or 226B of the Criminal Justice Act 2003;
  - “IPP prisoner” means a prisoner who is serving one or more of the following sentences and is not serving any other life sentence –
- (a) a sentence of imprisonment for public protection or detention in a young offender institution for public protection under section 225 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (including one imposed as a result of section 219 of the Armed Forces Act 2006); 30
  - (b) a sentence of detention for public protection under section 226 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (including one imposed as a result of section 221 of the Armed Forces Act 2006); 35
- “life sentence” has the same meaning as in section 34 of the Crime (Sentences) Act 1997.

## CHAPTER 6

### PRISONERS ETC

40

### 118 Employment in prisons: deductions etc from payments to prisoners

- (1) In section 47 of the Prison Act 1952 (power of Secretary of State to make rules for the regulation and management of prisons etc), in subsection (1) omit “employment”.



- (2) After that subsection insert –
- “(1A) The Secretary of State may make rules about –
- (a) the employment of persons who are required to be detained in secure training centres or young offender institutions;
  - (b) the making of payments to such persons in respect of work or other activities undertaken by them, or in respect of their unemployment.”
- (3) In that section, after subsection (5) insert –
- “(6) Rules made under this section may –
- (a) make different provision for different cases;
  - (b) contain supplementary, incidental, transitional, transitory or saving provision.”
- (4) After that section insert –
- “47A Rules about employment in prisons etc**
- (1) The Secretary of State may make rules about –
- (a) the employment of prisoners;
  - (b) the making of payments to prisoners in respect of work or other activities undertaken by them, or in respect of their unemployment.
- (2) The Secretary of State may make rules about the making, by the governor of the prison in which a prisoner is detained or the Secretary of State, of reductions in payments to the prisoner in respect of –
- (a) work undertaken by the prisoner,
  - (b) other activities undertaken by the prisoner, or
  - (c) the prisoner’s unemployment,
- where those payments are made by or on behalf of the Secretary of State.
- (3) Rules under subsection (2) may make provision, in a case where reductions are made by the governor, for amounts generated by the reductions to be used by the governor –
- (a) for making payments for the benefit of victims or communities;
  - (b) for making payments for the purposes of the rehabilitation of offenders;
  - (c) for other prescribed purposes.
- (4) Rules under subsection (2) may make provision, in a case where reductions are made by the governor –
- (a) for amounts generated by the reductions to be used by the governor for making payments into an account of a prescribed kind;
  - (b) for the administration of the account;
  - (c) for the making of payments out of the account to a prisoner before or after the prisoner’s release on fulfilment by the prisoner of prescribed conditions.
- (5) Rules under subsection (2) that make provision for amounts generated by reductions to be used to make payments may provide for such

- payments to be made after the deduction of amounts of a prescribed description.
- (6) The Secretary of State may make rules about the making of deductions from, or the imposition of levies on, payments to a prisoner in respect of— 5
- (a) work undertaken by the prisoner,
  - (b) other activities undertaken by the prisoner, or
  - (c) the prisoner’s unemployment,
- where those payments are made otherwise than by or on behalf of the Secretary of State. 10
- (7) Rules under subsection (6)—
- (a) may provide for deductions to be made, or levies to be imposed, by the governor of the prison or by the Secretary of State;
  - (b) must provide that, if the governor makes the deductions or imposes the levies, the governor must pay amounts generated to the Secretary of State. 15
- (8) The Secretary of State may make rules providing—
- (a) for the making of payments by the Secretary of State into an account of a prescribed kind;
  - (b) for the administration of the account; 20
  - (c) for the making of payments out of the account to a prisoner before or after the prisoner’s release on fulfilment by the prisoner of prescribed conditions.
- (9) Rules under this section may — 25
- (a) make different provision for different cases;
  - (b) contain supplementary, incidental, transitional, transitory or saving provision.
- (10) In this section references to the governor of a prison include— 30
- (a) the director of a contracted out prison within the meaning of Part 4 of the Criminal Justice Act 1991, and
  - (b) an officer of a prison who may exercise the functions of a governor in accordance with rules under section 47 or this section.
- (11) In this section — 35
- “prescribed” means prescribed by rules under this section;
  - “prisoner” includes a prisoner on temporary release.”
- (5) In section 66(4) of the Criminal Justice Act 1967 (procedure applying to rules under section 47 of the Prison Act 1952), for “of the said Act of 1952” substitute “or section 47A of the Prison Act 1952”.
- (6) In section 127(6) of the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 (inducements to prison officers to contravene prison rules: meaning of “prison rules”), after “section 47” insert “or 47A”. 40
- (7) In section 4 of the Prisoners’ Earnings Act 1996 (interpretation)—
- (a) omit subsection (2) (application of the Act to England and Wales), and
  - (b) in subsection (3) (application of the Act to Scotland), for “In the application of this Act to Scotland” substitute “In this Act”. 45

- (8) In section 5 of that Act (short title, commencement and extent), for subsection (3) substitute –
- “(3) This Act extends to Scotland only.”
- (9) In section 45(2) of the National Minimum Wage Act 1998 (exclusion for prisoners doing work in pursuance of prison rules: interpretation), in paragraph (a) of the definition of “prison rules”, after “section 47” insert “or 47A”. 5
- (10) Before the coming into force of section 59 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (abolition of power to provide remand centres), section 47(1A) of the Prison Act 1952 has effect as if it referred also to persons required to be detained in remand centres. 10
- (11) Before the coming into force of section 61 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (abolition of sentences of detention in a young offender institution, custody for life etc) –
- (a) section 47(1A) of the Prison Act 1952 has effect as if the references to persons required to be detained in young offender institutions were to persons aged under 18 required to be so detained, and 15
- (b) section 47A of that Act has effect as if –
- (i) “prison” included a young offender institution, and
- (ii) “prisoner” included a person aged 18 or over who is required to be detained in a young offender institution. 20
- (12) The Secretary of State may make such payments to such persons as the Secretary of State considers appropriate in connection with measures that appear to the Secretary of State to be intended to –
- (a) rehabilitate offenders, 25
- (b) prevent re-offending, or
- (c) limit the impact of crime.
- (13) In making payments under subsection (12), the Secretary of State must have regard to the sums that have been made available to, or received by, the Secretary of State by virtue of rules under section 47A of the Prison Act 1952 (reductions, deductions and levies in respect of payments to prisoners etc.). 30

## 119 Transfer of prisoners: prosecution of other offences

In the Repatriation of Prisoners Act 1984, after section 3 insert –

### “3A Prosecution of other offences

- (1) This section applies where – 35
- (a) a person has been transferred into Great Britain under a warrant under section 1, and
- (b) the international arrangements in accordance with which the person has been transferred contain a speciality provision.
- (2) The person must not, unless a condition in subsection (3) is met – 40
- (a) be prosecuted for any offence committed before the departure of that person from the country or territory from which that person has been transferred, or
- (b) be detained or otherwise subjected to any restriction of liberty for any offence committed before the departure of that person 45

from the country or territory from which that person has been transferred, other than the offence in respect of which the person has been transferred.

- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2), the conditions are as follows—
- (a) the person has consented to the transfer; 5
  - (b) the offence is an offence which is not punishable with imprisonment or another form of detention;
  - (c) the offence is an offence in respect of which the person will not be detained in connection with the person’s trial, sentence or appeal; 10
  - (d) the person is given an opportunity to leave Great Britain and—
    - (i) the person does not do so before the end of the permitted period, or
    - (ii) if the person does so before the end of the permitted period, the person subsequently returns to Great Britain; 15
  - (e) after the transfer has taken place, the person has made a renunciation of the application of subsection (2) to the offence;
  - (f) the appropriate authority of the country or territory from which the person has been transferred consents to the prosecution of the offence. 20
- (4) For the purpose of subsection (3)(d) the “permitted period” is 45 days starting with the day on which the person’s sentence ends.
- (5) For the purpose of subsection (3)(e) a renunciation must be made before a court before which the person may be prosecuted for that offence.
- (6) In this section a “speciality provision” means a provision preventing or limiting the prosecution, detention or other restriction of liberty of the person (“P”) for any offence committed before the departure of P from the country or territory from which P has been transferred, other than for the offence in respect of which P has been transferred.” 25

**120 Transit of prisoners** 30

- (1) In the Repatriation of Prisoners Act 1984, after section 6 insert—

**“6A Transit**

- (1) The relevant Minister may issue a transit order where—
- (a) the United Kingdom is a party to international arrangements providing for the transfer between the United Kingdom and a country or territory outside the British Islands of persons to whom subsection (2) applies; and 35
  - (b) the relevant Minister has received a request from the appropriate authority of that country or territory in accordance with those arrangements for the transit of a person to whom subsection (2) applies through a part of Great Britain. 40
- (2) A person falls within this subsection if—
- (a) that person is for the time being required to be detained in a prison, a hospital or any other institution either—

- (i) by virtue of an order made in the course of the exercise by a court or tribunal in a country or territory outside the British Islands of its criminal jurisdiction; or
      - (ii) by virtue of any provisions of the law of such a country or territory which are similar to any of the provisions of this Act; and
    - (b) except in a case where a transit request is made in the circumstances described in section 6D(1), that person is present in a country or territory outside the British Islands.
  - (3) Terms used in subsection (2)(a) have the same meaning as in section 1(7). 10
  - (4) In this section and sections 6B, 6C and 6D “transit order” means an order issued by the relevant Minister, in respect of a person who has been the subject of a request within subsection (1)(b), which authorises the detention of that person in any part of Great Britain at any time when that person is in transit. 15
  - (5) In subsection (4) “detention” includes detention while the person is being taken from one place to another place within Great Britain.
  - (6) A person may be detained pursuant to a transit order only for as long as is reasonable and necessary to allow the transit to take place. 20
  - (7) In this section and section 6B “relevant Minister” means –
    - (a) the Scottish Ministers, in a case where it is proposed that the person who is the subject of a request under subsection (1)(b) will, whilst in transit –
      - (i) be present only in Scotland, or 25
      - (ii) arrive in Scotland before being taken to another part of Great Britain;
    - (b) the Secretary of State, in any other case.
  - (8) For the purposes of this section and sections 6B and 6C a person who is the subject of a transit order is “in transit” at any time during the period beginning with the arrival of that person in Great Britain and ending with the removal of that person from Great Britain. 30
- 6B Transit: supplementary**
- (1) A person who is the subject of a transit order is deemed to be in the legal custody of the relevant Minister at any time when that person is in transit. 35
  - (2) A constable may for the purposes of a transit order detain a person who is the subject of that order.
  - (3) The relevant Minister may, from time to time, designate any person as a person who is for the time being authorised for the purposes of a transit order to detain a person under the order. 40
  - (4) A person authorised under subsection (3) has all the powers, authority, protection and privileges of a constable in any part of Great Britain in which the person who is the subject of the transit order is for the time being. 45

- 
- (5) If a person who is the subject of a transit order escapes or is unlawfully at large, that person may be arrested without warrant by a constable.
- (6) A constable may search a person who is the subject of a transit order, and any item in the possession of that person, for any item which that person might use – 5
- (a) to cause physical injury to that person or to any other person; or
- (b) to assist that person to escape from detention.
- (7) The power conferred by subsection (6) does not authorise a constable to require a person to remove any clothing other than an outer coat, jacket, headgear or gloves. 10
- (8) The power conferred by subsection (6) includes power to use reasonable force where necessary.
- (9) A constable searching a person in the exercise of the power conferred by subsection (6) may seize any item found if the constable has reasonable grounds for believing that the person searched might use the item – 15
- (a) to cause physical injury to that person or to any other person; or
- (b) to assist that person to escape from detention.
- (10) Any item seized from a person under subsection (9) may be retained while that person is in transit. 20
- (11) In this section “constable” means –
- (a) any person who is a constable in any part of Great Britain or who has, under any enactment (including subsection (4) above), the powers of a constable in any part of Great Britain, or
- (b) any person who is a prison officer within the meaning of section 117(1) of the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994. 25
- (12) A person who is a constable by virtue of subsection (11)(a) has, for the purposes of section 6A, this section and section 6C, all the powers, authority, protection and privileges of a constable in any part of Great Britain in which a person who is the subject of a transit order is for the time being. 30
- 6C Transit through different parts of Great Britain**
- (1) Where the Scottish Ministers issue a transit order and it is proposed that the person who is the subject of the order will be taken to a part of Great Britain other than Scotland whilst in transit, they must notify the Secretary of State. 35
- (2) The Scottish Ministers need not notify the Secretary of State where the Secretary of State has agreed in writing to the transit order.
- (3) Unless the Secretary of State agrees in writing to the transit order, that order authorises the detention of the person subject to it in Scotland only. 40
- (4) But where the person escapes or is unlawfully at large, the order also authorises –
- (a) the arrest of the person under section 6B(5) in a part of Great Britain other than Scotland, and 45

- (b) the detention of the person in that part by a constable (within the meaning of that section) for the purpose of taking the person to Scotland.
  - (5) Where the Secretary of State issues a transit order and it is proposed that the person who is the subject of the order will be taken to Scotland whilst in transit, the Secretary of State must notify the Scottish Ministers. 5
  - (6) The Secretary of State need not notify the Scottish Ministers where the Scottish Ministers have agreed in writing to the transit order.
  - (7) Unless the Scottish Ministers agree in writing to the transit order, that order authorises the detention of the person subject to it only in a part of Great Britain other than Scotland. 10
  - (8) But where the person escapes or is unlawfully at large, the order also authorises –
    - (a) the arrest of the person under section 6B(5) in Scotland, and 15
    - (b) the detention of the person in Scotland by a constable (within the meaning of that section) for the purpose of taking the person to a part of Great Britain other than Scotland.
- 6D Transit: unscheduled arrivals**
- (1) This section applies where – 20
    - (a) a person is being transferred between two countries or territories outside the United Kingdom in accordance with international arrangements between those two countries or territories providing for the transfer of persons within section 6A(2)(a), 25
    - (b) the United Kingdom is a party to international arrangements of the kind mentioned in section 6A(1)(a) with at least one of those countries or territories such that the country or territory can make a request under section 6A(1)(b), and
    - (c) the person makes an unscheduled arrival in Great Britain. 30
  - (2) A constable may detain a person to whom subsection (1) applies until the expiry of the period of 72 hours beginning with the person’s arrival in Great Britain or until a transit order is issued under section 6A in respect of that person, whichever is the sooner.
  - (3) In this section “constable” means any person who is a constable in any part of Great Britain or who has, under any enactment (including section 6B(4) above), the powers of a constable in any part of Great Britain. 35
  - (4) A person who is a constable by virtue of subsection (3) has for the purposes of this section all the powers, authority, protection and privileges of a constable in the part of Great Britain in which the person mentioned in subsection (2) is for the time being.” 40
  - (2) In section 9 of the Repatriation of Prisoners Act 1984 (short title, commencement and extent) –
    - (a) at the beginning of subsection (3) insert “Subject to subsection (3A),”, 45  
and

- (b) after that subsection insert –
- “(3A) Sections 3A and 6A to 6D extend to England and Wales and Scotland only.”

## CHAPTER 7

### OUT OF COURT DISPOSALS 5

#### *Penalty notices*

#### **121 Penalty notices for disorderly behaviour**

Schedule 20 (which amends the provision for penalty notices for disorderly behaviour) has effect.

#### *Cautions* 10

#### **122 Conditional cautions: involvement of prosecutors**

- (1) The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 22(3A) (conditions that may be attached to a conditional caution) for “by a relevant prosecutor” substitute “in the condition”.
- (3) In section 23(2) (relevant prosecutor must decide there is sufficient evidence to prosecute and that a conditional caution should be given) after “a relevant prosecutor” insert “or the authorised person”. 15
- (4) In section 23A(5) (relevant prosecutor must specify amount of financial penalty and how it is to be paid etc) for “a relevant prosecutor must also” substitute “the condition must”. 20
- (5) In section 23B (variation of conditions by relevant prosecutor) after “A relevant prosecutor” insert “or an authorised person”.
- (6) In section 25 (code of practice) in subsection (2)(ga) (Secretary of State’s code of practice may include provision about what a relevant prosecutor may provide under section 23A(5)(b)) for “by a relevant prosecutor” substitute “in a condition”. 25

#### **123 Conditional cautions: removal etc of certain foreign offenders**

In section 22 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (conditional cautions) –

- (a) in subsection (3) (both as originally enacted and as substituted by section 17 of the Police and Justice Act 2006) (conditions attached to conditional cautions to have certain objects) for “such a caution” substitute “any conditional caution”, and 30
- (b) after subsection (3C) insert –
  - “(3D) A conditional caution given to a relevant foreign offender may have conditions attached to it that have one or more of the objects mentioned in subsection (3E) (whether or not in addition to conditions with one or more of the objects mentioned in subsection (3)). 35



- (3E) The objects are –
- (a) bringing about the departure of the relevant foreign offender from the United Kingdom;
  - (b) ensuring that the relevant foreign offender does not return to the United Kingdom for a period of time. 5
- (3F) If a relevant foreign offender is given a conditional caution with a condition attached to it with the object of ensuring that the offender does not return to the United Kingdom for a period of time, the expiry of that period does not of itself give rise to any right on the part of the offender to return to the United Kingdom. 10
- (3G) In this section “relevant foreign offender” means –
- (a) an offender directions for whose removal from the United Kingdom have been, or may be, given under –
    - (i) Schedule 2 to the Immigration Act 1971, or 15
    - (ii) section 10 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999, or
  - (b) an offender against whom a deportation order under section 5 of the Immigration Act 1971 is in force.”

*Youth cautions* 20

## 124 Youth cautions

- (1) Omit sections 65 (reprimands and warning) and 66 (effect of reprimands and warnings) of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998.
- (2) Before section 66A of that Act insert –

*“Young offenders: youth cautions* 25

### 66ZA Youth cautions

- (1) A constable may give a child or young person (“Y”) a caution under this section (a “youth caution”) if –
  - (a) the constable decides that there is sufficient evidence to charge Y with an offence, 30
  - (b) Y admits to the constable that Y committed the offence, and
  - (c) the constable does not consider that Y should be prosecuted or given a youth conditional caution in respect of the offence.
- (2) A youth caution given to a person under the age of 17 must be given in the presence of an appropriate adult. 35
- (3) If a constable gives a youth caution to a person, the constable must explain the matters referred to in subsection (4) in ordinary language to –
  - (a) that person, and
  - (b) where that person is under the age of 17, the appropriate adult. 40
- (4) Those matters are –
  - (a) the effect of subsections (1) to (3) and (5) to (7) of section 66ZB, and

- (b) any guidance issued under subsection (4) of that section.
- (5) The Secretary of State must publish, in such manner as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, guidance as to—
- (a) the circumstances in which it is appropriate to give youth cautions, 5
  - (b) the places where youth cautions may be given,
  - (c) the category of constable by whom youth cautions may be given, and
  - (d) the form which youth cautions are to take and the manner in which they are to be given and recorded. 10
- (6) No caution other than a youth caution or a youth conditional caution may be given to a child or young person.
- (7) In this Chapter “appropriate adult”, in relation to a child or young person, means—
- (a) a parent or guardian of the child or young person, 15
  - (b) if the child or young person is in the care of a local authority or voluntary organisation, a person representing that authority or organisation,
  - (c) a social worker of a local authority, or
  - (d) if no person falling within paragraph (a), (b) or (c) is available, any responsible person aged 18 or over who is not a police officer or a person employed by the police. 20

#### **66ZB Effect of youth cautions**

- (1) If a constable gives a youth caution to a person, the constable must as soon as practicable refer the person to a youth offending team. 25
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), on a referral of a person under subsection (1), the youth offending team—
- (a) must assess the person, and
  - (b) unless they consider it inappropriate to do so, must arrange for the person to participate in a rehabilitation programme. 30
- (3) If the person has not previously been referred under subsection (1) and has not previously been given a youth conditional caution, the youth offending team—
- (a) may assess the person, and
  - (b) may arrange for the person to participate in a rehabilitation programme. 35
- (4) The Secretary of State must publish, in such manner as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, guidance as to—
- (a) what should be included in a rehabilitation programme arranged for a person under subsection (2) or (3), 40
  - (b) the manner in which any failure by a person to participate in a programme is to be recorded, and
  - (c) the persons to whom any such failure must be notified.
- (5) Subsection (6) applies if—

- (a) a person who has received two or more youth cautions is convicted of an offence committed within two years beginning with the date of the last of those cautions, or
  - (b) a person who has received a youth conditional caution followed by a youth caution is convicted of an offence committed within two years beginning with the date of the youth caution. 5
- (6) The court by or before which the person is convicted –
  - (a) must not make an order under section 12(1)(b) of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (conditional discharge) in respect of the offence unless it is of the opinion that there are exceptional circumstances relating to the offence or the person that justify it doing so, and 10
  - (b) where it does so, must state in open court that it is of that opinion and its reasons for that opinion.
- (7) There may be cited in criminal proceedings – 15
  - (a) a youth caution given to a person, and
  - (b) a report on a failure by a person to participate in a rehabilitation programme arranged for the person under subsection (2) or (3), in the same circumstances as a conviction of the person may be cited.
- (8) In this section “rehabilitation programme” means a programme with the purpose of rehabilitating participants and preventing them from re-offending.” 20
- (3) Schedule 21 (youth cautions: consequential amendments) has effect.
- (4) The amendments made by this section and that Schedule do not apply in relation to an offence committed before they come into force. 25
- (5) A reprimand or warning of a person under section 65 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998, or any caution treated as such by virtue of paragraph 5 of Schedule 9 to that Act, is to be treated for the purposes of any enactment or instrument as a youth caution given to that person under section 66ZA(1) of that Act. 30
- (6) A referral of a person to a youth offending team under section 66(1) of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 is to be treated for the purposes of section 66ZB of that Act as a referral under that section.
- (7) A rehabilitation programme provided under section 66 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 is to be treated for the purposes of any enactment or instrument as provided under section 66ZA of that Act. 35

## 125 Youth conditional cautions: previous convictions

In section 66A(1) of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (requirements to be met before youth conditional caution may be given) omit paragraph (a) and the “and” at the end of that paragraph (requirement of no previous convictions). 40

## 126 Youth conditional cautions: references to youth offending teams

In section 66A of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (youth conditional cautions)

after subsection (6) insert –

“(6A) If an authorised person gives a youth conditional caution to an offender, the authorised person must as soon as practicable refer the offender to a youth offending team.”

<b>127 Youth conditional cautions: involvement of prosecutors</b>	5
(1) The Crime and Disorder Act 1998 is amended as follows.	
(2) In section 66A(4) (conditions that may be attached to a youth conditional caution) for “by a relevant prosecutor” substitute “in the condition”.	
(3) In section 66B(2) (relevant prosecutor must decide that there is sufficient evidence to prosecute and that a conditional caution should be given) after “a relevant prosecutor” insert “or the authorised person”.	10
(4) In section 66C(5) (relevant prosecutor must specify amount of financial penalty and how it must be paid etc) for “a relevant prosecutor must also” substitute “the condition must”.	
(5) In section 66D (variation of conditions by relevant prosecutor) after “A relevant prosecutor” insert “or an authorised person”.	15
(6) In section 66G (code of practice) in subsection (2)(h) (Secretary of State’s code of practice may include provision about what a relevant prosecutor may provide under section 66C(5)(b)) for “by a relevant prosecutor” substitute “in a condition”.	20

## CHAPTER 8

### OFFENCES

<b>128 Offences of threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon in public or on school premises</b>	
(1) In the Prevention of Crime Act 1953, after section 1 (prohibition of the carrying of offensive weapons without lawful authority or reasonable excuse) insert –	25
<b>“1A Offence of threatening with weapon in public</b>	
(1) A person is guilty of an offence if that person –	
(a) has an offensive weapon with him or her in a public place,	
(b) unlawfully and intentionally threatens another person with the weapon, and	30
(c) does so in such a way that there is an immediate risk of serious physical harm to that other person.	
(2) For the purposes of this section physical harm is serious if it amounts to grievous bodily harm for the purposes of the Offences against the Person Act 1861.	35
(3) In this section “public place” and “offensive weapon” have the same meaning as in section 1.	
(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable –	

- (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or to both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 4 years or to a fine, or to both. 5
- (5) Where a person aged 16 or over is convicted of an offence under this section, the court must impose an appropriate custodial sentence (with or without a fine) unless the court is of the opinion that there are particular circumstances which –
  - (a) relate to the offence or to the offender, and 10
  - (b) would make it unjust to do so in all the circumstances.
- (6) In this section “appropriate custodial sentence” means –
  - (a) in the case of a person who is aged 18 or over when convicted, a sentence of imprisonment for a term of at least 6 months;
  - (b) in the case of a person who is aged at least 16 but under 18 when convicted, a detention and training order of at least 4 months. 15
- (7) In considering whether it is of the opinion mentioned in subsection (5) in the case of a person aged under 18, the court must have regard to its duty under section 44 of the Children and Young Persons Act 1933.
- (8) In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003, the reference in subsection (4)(a) to 12 months is to be read as a reference to 6 months. 20
- (9) In relation to times before the coming into force of paragraph 180 of Schedule 7 to the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000, the reference in subsection (6)(a) to a sentence of imprisonment, in relation to an offender aged under 21 at the time of conviction, is to be read as a reference to a sentence of detention in a young offender institution. 25
- (10) If on a person’s trial for an offence under this section (whether on indictment or not) the person is found not guilty of that offence but it is proved that the person committed an offence under section 1, the person may be convicted of the offence under that section.” 30
- (2) In the Criminal Justice Act 1988 after section 139A (offence of having article with blade or point or offensive weapon on school premises) insert –  
**“139AA Offence of threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon”** 35
  - (1) A person is guilty of an offence if that person –
    - (a) has an article to which this section applies with him or her in a public place or on school premises,
    - (b) unlawfully and intentionally threatens another person with the article, and 40
    - (c) does so in such a way that there is an immediate risk of serious physical harm to that other person.
  - (2) In relation to a public place this section applies to an article to which section 139 applies.
  - (3) In relation to school premises this section applies to each of these – 45
    - (a) an article to which section 139 applies;

- (b) an offensive weapon within the meaning of section 1 of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953.
- (4) For the purposes of this section physical harm is serious if it amounts to grievous bodily harm for the purposes of the Offences against the Person Act 1861. 5
- (5) In this section –  
     “public place” has the same meaning as in section 139;  
     “school premises” has the same meaning as in section 139A.
- (6) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable – 10  
     (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or to both;  
     (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 4 years or to a fine, or to both.
- (7) Where a person aged 16 or over is convicted of an offence under this section, the court must impose an appropriate custodial sentence (with or without a fine) unless the court is of the opinion that there are particular circumstances which – 15  
     (a) relate to the offence or to the offender, and  
     (b) would make it unjust to do so in all the circumstances. 20
- (8) In this section “appropriate custodial sentence” means –  
     (a) in the case of a person who is aged 18 or over when convicted, a sentence of imprisonment for a term of at least 6 months;  
     (b) in the case of a person who is aged at least 16 but under 18 when convicted, a detention and training order of at least 4 months. 25
- (9) In considering whether it is of the opinion mentioned in subsection (7) in the case of a person aged under 18, the court must have regard to its duty under section 44 of the Children and Young Persons Act 1933.
- (10) In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003, the reference in subsection (6)(a) to 12 months is to be read as a reference to 6 months. 30
- (11) In relation to times before the coming into force of paragraph 180 of Schedule 7 to the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000, the reference in subsection (8)(a) to a sentence of imprisonment, in relation to an offender aged under 21 at the time of conviction, is to be read as a reference to a sentence of detention in a young offender institution. 35
- (12) If on a person’s trial for an offence under this section (whether on indictment or not) the person is found not guilty of that offence but it is proved that the person committed an offence under section 139 or 139A, the person may be convicted of the offence under that section.” 40
- (3) Schedule 22 (knives and offensive weapons: minor and consequential amendments) has effect.

## 129 Causing serious injury by dangerous driving

- (1) The Road Traffic Act 1988 is amended as follows.

(2) After section 1 insert –

**“1A Causing serious injury by dangerous driving**

(1) A person who causes serious injury to another person by driving a mechanically propelled vehicle dangerously on a road or other public place is guilty of an offence. 5

(2) In this section “serious injury” means –  
 (a) in England and Wales, physical harm which amounts to grievous bodily harm for the purposes of the Offences against the Person Act 1861, and  
 (b) in Scotland, severe physical injury.” 10

(3) In section 2A (meaning of dangerous driving) in subsections (1) and (2) after “sections 1” insert “, 1A”.

(4) Section 1A inserted by subsection (2) has effect only in relation to driving occurring after that subsection comes into force.

(5) In Part 1 of Schedule 2 to the Road Traffic Offenders Act 1988 (prosecution and punishment of offences under the Traffic Acts) in the appropriate place insert – 15

“RTA section 1A	Causing serious injury by dangerous driving.	(a) Summarily.	(a) 12 months or the statutory maximum or both.	Obligator y.	Obligator y.	3-11.”	20
		(b) On indictment.	(b) 5 years or a fine or both.				

(6) In the entry inserted by subsection (5), in relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 “12 months” is to be read as “6 months (in England and Wales) or 12 months (in Scotland)”. 30

(7) Schedule 23 (causing serious injury by dangerous driving: minor and consequential amendments) has effect.

**130 Offence of squatting in a residential building**

(1) A person commits an offence if –  
 (a) the person is in a residential building as a trespasser having entered it as a trespasser, 35  
 (b) the person knows or ought to know that he or she is a trespasser, and  
 (c) the person is living in the building or intends to live there for any period.

(2) The offence is not committed by a person holding over after the end of a lease or licence (even if the person leaves and re-enters the building). 40

(3) For the purposes of this section –

- (a) “building” includes any structure or part of a structure (including a temporary or moveable structure), and
- (b) a building is “residential” if it is designed or adapted, before the time of entry, for use as a place to live.
- (4) For the purposes of this section the fact that a person derives title from a trespasser, or has the permission of a trespasser, does not prevent the person from being a trespasser. 5
- (5) A person convicted of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 51 weeks or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale (or both). 10
- (6) In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 281(5) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003, the reference in subsection (5) to 51 weeks is to be read as a reference to 6 months.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a) it is irrelevant whether the person entered the building as a trespasser before or after the commencement of this section. 15

### **131 Reasonable force for the purposes of self-defence etc**

- (1) Section 76 of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (reasonable force for the purposes of self-defence etc) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2) after paragraph (a) omit “and” and insert –  
 “(aa) the common law defence of defence of property; and”. 20
- (3) After subsection (6) insert –  
 “(6A) In deciding the question mentioned in subsection (3), a possibility that D could have retreated is to be considered (so far as relevant) as a factor to be taken into account, rather than as giving rise to a duty to retreat.”
- (4) In subsection (8) for “Subsection (7) is” substitute “Subsections (6A) and (7) are”. 25
- (5) In subsection (10)(a) after sub-paragraph (i) omit “or” and insert –  
 “(ia) the purpose of defence of property under the common law, or”.

## **PART 4** 30

### FINAL PROVISIONS

### **132 Power to make consequential and supplementary provision etc**

- (1) The Lord Chancellor or the Secretary of State may by regulations make consequential, supplementary, incidental, transitional, transitory or saving provision in relation to any provision of this Act. 35
- (2) The regulations may, in particular amend, repeal, revoke or otherwise modify legislation.
- (3) Regulations under this section are to be made by statutory instrument.



- 
- (4) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament, subject to subsection (5).
- (5) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section that amend or repeal an Act (whether alone or with other provision) may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament. 5
- (6) In this section –  
“Act” includes an Act or Measure of the National Assembly for Wales;  
“legislation”, in relation to regulations made in relation to a provision of this Act, means – 10  
(a) an Act passed before or in the same Session as this Act, or  
(b) an instrument made under an Act before the provision comes into force.
- 133 Financial provision** 15
- There is to be paid out of money provided by Parliament –  
(a) any expenditure incurred by a Minister of the Crown by virtue of this Act, and  
(b) any increase attributable to this Act in the sums payable under any other Act out of money so provided. 20
- 134 Commencement**
- (1) The provisions of this Act come into force on such day as the Lord Chancellor or the Secretary of State may appoint by order, subject to subsection (2).
- (2) This Part comes into force on the day on which this Act is passed.
- (3) An order under this section is to be made by statutory instrument. 25
- (4) An order under this section may –  
(a) appoint different days for different purposes, and  
(b) make transitional, transitory or saving provision.
- (5) An order under this section bringing into force section 122, 123, 125, 126 or 127 may appoint different days for different areas. 30
- 135 Extent**
- (1) This Act extends to England and Wales only, subject to subsections (2) to (5).
- (2) The following provisions extend to England and Wales and Scotland –  
(a) sections 119 and 120, and  
(b) section 129. 35
- (3) The following provisions extend to England and Wales and Northern Ireland –  
(a) section 21,  
(b) section 32,  
(c) section 39 and Schedule 6, and  
(d) sections 40 to 42. 40

- (4) The following provisions extend to England and Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland –
  - (a) Schedule 8 (and section 59(2)), and
  - (b) this Part.
- (5) An amendment, repeal or revocation made by this Act has the same extent as the provision amended, repealed or revoked. 5
- (6) Subsection (5) does not apply to section 131 (which extends to England and Wales only).

**136 Channel Islands, Isle of Man and British overseas territories**

- (1) The power conferred by section 9(4) of the Repatriation of Prisoners Act 1984 (power to extend to Channel Islands, Isle of Man and British overseas territories) is exercisable in relation to any amendment of that Act that is made by or under this Act. 10
- (2) The power conferred by section 338 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (power to extend to Channel Islands and Isle of Man) is exercisable in relation to any amendment of that Act that is made by or under this Act. 15
- (3) In section 384 of the Armed Forces Act 2006 (extent to Channel Islands, Isle of Man and British overseas territories) references to that Act include that Act as amended by or under this Act.

**137 Short title**

20

This Act may be cited as the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.

## SCHEDULES

### SCHEDULE 1

Section 8

#### CIVIL LEGAL SERVICES

##### PART 1

##### SERVICES

5

#### *Care, supervision and protection of children*

- 1 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to—
  - (a) orders under section 25 of the Children Act 1989 (“the 1989 Act”) (secure accommodation);
  - (b) orders under Part 4 of the 1989 Act (care and supervision); 10
  - (c) orders under Part 5 of the 1989 Act (protection of children);
  - (d) approval by a court under paragraph 19 of Schedule 2 to the 1989 Act (arrangements to assist children to live abroad);
  - (e) parenting orders under section 8 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (“1998 Act”); 15
  - (f) child safety orders under section 11 of the 1998 Act;
  - (g) orders for contact under section 26 of the Adoption and Children Act 2002 (“the 2002 Act”);
  - (h) applications for leave of the court to remove a child from a person’s custody under section 36 of the 2002 Act; 20
  - (i) placement orders, recovery orders or adoption orders under Chapter 3 of Part 1 of the 2002 Act (see sections 21, 41 and 46 of that Act);
  - (j) orders under section 84 of the 2002 Act (parental responsibility prior to adoption abroad);
  - (k) any other orders or procedures under an enactment for the care, supervision or protection of children that are prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph. 25
- (2) Civil legal services provided in relation to an order under an enactment made—
  - (a) as an alternative to an order mentioned in, or prescribed under, sub-paragraph (1), or 30
  - (b) in proceedings heard together with proceedings relating to such an order.

#### *Exclusions*

- (3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) are subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 35

#### *Definitions*

(4) In this paragraph “children” means persons under the age of 18.

*Special educational needs*

- 2 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to matters arising under Part 4 of the Education Act 1996 (special educational needs). 5  
*Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*Abuse of child or vulnerable adult*

- 3 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to abuse of an individual that took place at a time when the individual was a child or vulnerable adult, but only where – 10
- (a) the services are provided to the individual, or
- (b) the individual has died and the services are provided – 15
- (i) to the individual’s personal representative, or
- (ii) for the purposes of a claim under the Fatal Accidents Act 1976 for the benefit of the individual’s dependants.

*General exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraphs 1, 3, 8 and 12 of that Part.
- (3) But the exclusions described in sub-paragraph (2) are subject to the exception in sub-paragraph (4). 20
- (4) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) include services provided in relation to negligence other than clinical negligence.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.

*Specific exclusion* 25

- (6) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include services provided in relation to a matter arising under a family enactment.

*Definitions*

- (7) In this paragraph – 30
- “abuse” means physical or mental abuse, including –
- (a) sexual abuse, and
- (b) abuse in the form of violence, neglect, maltreatment and exploitation;
- “child” means a person under the age of 18;
- “clinical negligence” means breach of a duty of care or trespass to the person committed in the course of the provision of clinical or medical services (including dental or nursing services); 35
- “family enactment” has the meaning given in paragraph 10;
- “personal representative”, in relation to an individual who has died, means – 40
- (a) a person responsible for administering the individual’s estate under the law of England and Wales, Scotland or Northern Ireland, or

(b) a person who, under the law of another country or territory, has functions equivalent to those of administering the individual's estate;

“vulnerable adult” means a person aged 18 or over whose ability to protect himself or herself from abuse is significantly impaired through physical or mental disability or illness, through old age or otherwise. 5

*Working with children and vulnerable adults*

- 4 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to—
- (a) the inclusion of a person in a barred list or the removal of a person from a barred list; 10
  - (b) a disqualification order under section 28, 29 or 29A of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (disqualification from working with children);
  - (c) a direction under section 142 of the Education Act 2002 (prohibition from teaching etc). 15

*Exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*Definitions* 20

- (3) In this paragraph “barred list” means a list maintained under—
- (a) section 2 of the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 (persons barred from regulated activities relating to children or vulnerable adults);
  - (b) section 81 of the Care Standards Act 2000; 25
  - (c) section 1 of the Protection of Children Act 1999.

*Mental health and mental capacity*

- 5 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to matters arising under—
- (a) the Mental Health Act 1983;
  - (b) paragraph 5(2) of the Schedule to the Repatriation of Prisoners Act 1984; 30
  - (c) the Mental Capacity Act 2005.

*General exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 35

*Specific exclusion*

- (3) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include services provided in relation to—
- (a) the creation of lasting powers of attorney under the Mental Capacity Act 2005, or 40
  - (b) the making of advance decisions under that Act.
- (4) Sub-paragraph (3) does not exclude services provided in relation to determinations and declarations by a court under the Mental Capacity Act 2005 as to the validity, meaning, effect or applicability of—
- (a) a lasting power of attorney that has been created, or 45

- (b) an advance decision that has been made.

*Community care*

- 6 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to community care services.  
*Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 5  
*Definitions*
- (3) In this paragraph –
- “community care services” means services which a relevant person may provide or arrange to be provided under – 10
- (a) Part 3 of the National Assistance Act 1948 (“the 1948 Act”) (local authority support for children and families);
  - (b) section 47 of the 1948 Act (removal to suitable premises of persons in need of care and attention);
  - (c) section 48 of the 1948 Act (temporary protection for property of persons admitted to hospital); 15
  - (d) section 45 of the Health Services and Public Health Act 1968 (arrangements for promoting welfare of old people);
  - (e) section 117 of the Mental Health Act 1983 (after-care);
  - (f) section 17 of the Children Act 1989 (“the 1989 Act”) (provision of services for children in need); 20
  - (g) section 20 of the 1989 Act (provision of accommodation for children);
  - (h) sections 22A, 22B, 22C and 23 of the 1989 Act (accommodation and maintenance for children in care and looked after children); 25
  - (i) sections 23B and 23C of the 1989 Act (local authority functions in respect of relevant children);
  - (j) sections 24, 24A and 24B of the 1989 Act (provision of services for persons qualifying for advice and assistance); 30
  - (k) section 254 of, and Schedule 20 to, the National Health Service Act 2006 (functions of local social service authorities);
  - (l) section 192 of, and Schedule 15 to, the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (functions of local social service authorities); 35
  - (m) any other enactment prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph;
- “relevant person” means –
- (a) a district council;
  - (b) a county council; 40
  - (c) a county borough council;
  - (d) a London borough council;
  - (e) the Common Council of the City of London;
  - (f) a Primary Care Trust established under section 18 of the National Health Service Act 2006; 45
  - (g) a Local Health Board established under section 11 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;

- (h) any other person prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph.

*Inherent jurisdiction of High Court in relation to children and vulnerable adults*

- 7 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to the inherent jurisdiction of the High Court in relation to children and vulnerable adults. 5  
*Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.  
*Definitions*
- (3) In this paragraph— 10  
“adults” means persons aged 18 or over;  
“children” means persons under the age of 18.

*Unlawful removal of children from the United Kingdom*

- 8 (1) Civil legal services provided to an individual in relation to the following orders and requirements where the individual is seeking to prevent the unlawful removal of a related child from the United Kingdom— 15  
(a) a prohibited steps order or specific issue order (as defined in section 8(1) of the Children Act 1989);  
(b) an order under section 33 of the Family Law Act 1986 for disclosure of the child’s whereabouts; 20  
(c) a requirement under section 37 of that Act to surrender a passport issued to, or containing particulars of, the child.  
*Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 25  
*Definitions*
- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph, a child is related to an individual if the individual is the child’s parent or has parental responsibility for the child.
- (4) In this paragraph “child” means a person under the age of 18.

*Family homes and domestic violence* 30

- 9 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to home rights, occupation orders and non-molestation orders under Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996.
- (2) Civil legal services provided in relation to the following in circumstances arising out of a family relationship— 35  
(a) an injunction following assault, battery or false imprisonment;  
(b) the inherent jurisdiction of the High Court to protect an adult.  
*Exclusions*
- (3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) are subject to— 40  
(a) the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraphs 3 and 11 of that Part, and  
(b) the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.  
*Definitions*

- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph –
- (a) there is a family relationship between two people if they are associated with each other, and
  - (b) “associated” has the same meaning as in Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996 (see section 62 of that Act). 5
- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph, the Lord Chancellor may by regulations make provision about when circumstances arise out of a family relationship.

*Victims of domestic violence and family matters*

- 10 (1) Civil legal services provided to an adult (“A”) in relation to a matter arising out of a family relationship between A and another individual (“B”) where A has been abused by B or is at risk of being abused by B. 10  
*General exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraph 11 of that Part.
- (3) But the exclusions described in sub-paragraph (2) are subject to the exception in sub-paragraph (4). 15
- (4) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) include services provided in relation to conveyancing, but only where –
- (a) the services in relation to conveyancing are provided in the course of giving effect to a court order made in proceedings, and 20
  - (b) services described in that sub-paragraph (other than services in relation to conveyancing) are being or have been provided in relation to those proceedings under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part of this Act.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule. 25  
*Specific exclusion*
- (6) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include services provided in relation to a claim in tort in respect of the abuse of A by B.  
*Definitions*
- (7) For the purposes of this paragraph – 30
- (a) there is a family relationship between two people if they are associated with each other, and
  - (b) “associated” has the same meaning as in Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996 (see section 62 of that Act).
- (8) For the purposes of this paragraph – 35
- (a) matters arising out of a family relationship include matters arising under a family enactment, and
  - (b) (subject to paragraph (a)) the Lord Chancellor may by regulations make provision about when matters arise out of a family relationship. 40
- (9) In this paragraph –
- “abuse” means physical or mental abuse, including –
  - (a) sexual abuse, and
  - (b) abuse in the form of violence, neglect, maltreatment and exploitation; 45



- “adult” means a person aged 18 or over;
- “family enactment” means –
- (a) section 17 of the Married Women’s Property Act 1882 (questions between husband and wife as to property);
  - (b) the Maintenance Orders (Facilities for Enforcement) Act 1920; 5
  - (c) the Maintenance Orders Act 1950;
  - (d) the Maintenance Orders Act 1958;
  - (e) the Maintenance Orders (Reciprocal Enforcement) Act 1972;
  - (f) Schedule 1 to the Domicile and Matrimonial Proceedings Act 1973 (staying of matrimonial proceedings) and corresponding provision in relation to civil partnerships made by rules of court under section 223 of the Civil Partnership Act 2004; 10
  - (g) the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973; 15
  - (h) the Inheritance (Provision for Family Dependants) Act 1975;
  - (i) the Domestic Proceedings and Magistrates’ Courts Act 1978;
  - (j) Part 3 of the Matrimonial and Family Proceedings Act 1984 (financial relief after overseas divorce etc);
  - (k) Parts 1 and 3 of the Family Law Act 1986 (child custody and declarations of status); 20
  - (l) Parts 1 and 2 of the Children Act 1989 (orders with respect to children in family proceedings);
  - (m) section 53 of, and Schedule 7 to, the Family Law Act 1996 (transfer of tenancies on divorce etc or separation of cohabitants); 25
  - (n) Chapters 2 and 3 of Part 2 of the Civil Partnership Act 2004 (dissolution, nullity and other proceedings and property and financial arrangements);
  - (o) section 54 of the Human Fertilisation and Embryology Act 2008 (applications for parental orders). 30

*Protection of children and family matters*

- 11 (1) Civil legal services provided to an adult (“A”) in relation to the following orders and procedures where the child who is or would be the subject of the order is at risk of abuse from an individual other than A – 35
- (a) orders under section 4(2A) of the Children Act 1989 (“the 1989 Act”) (removal of father’s parental responsibility);
  - (b) orders under section 6(7) of the 1989 Act (termination of appointment of guardian);
  - (c) orders mentioned in section 8(1) of the 1989 Act (residence, contact and other orders); 40
  - (d) special guardianship orders under Part 2 of the 1989 Act;
  - (e) orders under section 33(1) of the Family Law Act 1986 (“the 1986 Act”) (disclosure of child’s whereabouts);
  - (f) orders under section 34(1) of the 1986 Act (recovery of child); 45
  - (g) any other orders or procedures under an enactment relating to children that are prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph.

*Exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*Definitions*

- (3) In this paragraph –
- “abuse” means physical or mental abuse, including –
    - (a) sexual abuse, and
    - (b) abuse in the form of violence, neglect, maltreatment and exploitation;
  - “adult” means a person aged 18 or over;
  - “child” means a person under the age of 18.

*Mediation in family disputes*

- 12 (1) Mediation provided in relation to family disputes.
- (2) Civil legal services provided in connection with the mediation of family disputes.
- Exclusions*
- (3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) are subject to the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraph 11 of that Part.
- (4) But the exclusions described in sub-paragraph (3) are subject to the exception in sub-paragraph (5).
- (5) The services described in sub-paragraph (2) include services provided in relation to conveyancing, but only where –
- (a) the services in relation to conveyancing are provided in the course of giving effect to arrangements for the resolution of a family dispute, and
  - (b) services described in that sub-paragraph or sub-paragraph (1) (other than services in relation to conveyancing) are being or have been provided in relation to the dispute under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part of this Act.
- (6) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) are subject to the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.
- Definitions*
- (7) For the purposes of this paragraph –
- (a) a dispute is a family dispute if it is a dispute between individuals about a matter arising out of a family relationship between the individuals,
  - (b) there is a family relationship between two individuals if they are associated with each other, and
  - (c) “associated” has the same meaning as in Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996 (see section 62 of that Act).
- (8) For the purposes of this paragraph –
- (a) matters arising out of a family relationship include matters arising under a family enactment, and
  - (b) (subject to paragraph (a)) the Lord Chancellor may by regulations make provision about when matters arise out of a family relationship.

- (9) In this paragraph –  
“child” means a person under the age of 18;  
“family enactment” has the meaning given in paragraph 10.

*Children who are parties to family proceedings*

- 13 (1) Civil legal services provided to a child in relation to family proceedings – 5  
(a) where the child is, or proposes to be, the applicant or respondent;  
(b) where the child is made a party to the proceedings by a court under rule 16.2 of the Family Procedure Rules;  
(c) where the child is a party to the proceedings and is conducting, or proposes to conduct, the proceedings without a children’s guardian or litigation friend in accordance with rule 16.6 of the Family Procedure Rules. 10

*Exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 15

*Definitions*

- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph –  
(a) proceedings are family proceedings if they relate to a matter arising out of a family relationship,  
(b) there is a family relationship between two individuals if they are associated with each other, and 20  
(c) “associated” has the same meaning as in Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996 (see section 62 of that Act).
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph –  
(a) matters arising out of a family relationship include matters arising under a family enactment, and 25  
(b) (subject to paragraph (a)) the Lord Chancellor may by regulations make provision about when matters arise out of a family relationship.
- (5) In this paragraph – 30  
“child” means a person under the age of 18;  
“family enactment” has the meaning given in paragraph 10.

*Forced marriage*

- 14 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to forced marriage protection orders under Part 4A of the Family Law Act 1996. 35

*Exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*EU and international agreements concerning children*

- 15 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to – 40  
(a) an application made to the Lord Chancellor under the 1980 European Convention on Child Custody for the recognition or enforcement in England and Wales of a decision relating to the custody of a child;

- 
- (b) an application made to the Lord Chancellor under the 1980 Hague Convention in respect of a child who is, or is believed to be, in England and Wales;
- (c) the recognition or enforcement of a judgment in England and Wales in accordance with Article 21, 28, 41, 42 or 48 of the 2003 Brussels Regulation. 5
- Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 10
- Definitions*
- (3) In this paragraph –
- “the 1980 European Convention on Child Custody” means the European Convention on Recognition and Enforcement of Decisions concerning Custody of Children and on the Restoration of Custody of Children which was signed in Luxembourg on 20 May 1980; 15
- “the 1980 Hague Convention” means the Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction which was signed at The Hague on 25 October 1980;
- “the 2003 Brussels Regulation” means Council Regulation (EC) No. 2001/2003 of 27 November 2003 concerning jurisdiction and the recognition and enforcement of judgments in matrimonial matters and the matters of parental responsibility. 20
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph, an application is made to the Lord Chancellor if it is addressed to the Lord Chancellor or transmitted to the Lord Chancellor in accordance with section 3 or 14 of the Child Abduction and Custody Act 1985. 25
- EU and international agreements concerning maintenance*
- 16 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to an application under the following for the recognition or enforcement in England and Wales of a maintenance order – 30
- (a) the 1968 Brussels Convention;
- (b) the 1973 Hague Convention;
- (c) the 1989 Lugano Convention;
- (d) the 2000 Brussels Regulation;
- (e) the 2007 Lugano Convention. 35
- (2) Civil legal services provided in relation to an application under Article 56 of the EU Maintenance Regulation (applications relating to maintenance decisions).
- (3) Civil legal services provided to an individual in relation to proceedings in England and Wales relating to the recognition, enforceability or enforcement of a maintenance decision in circumstances in which the individual falls within Article 47(2) or (3) of the EU Maintenance Regulation (parties who benefited from free legal aid etc in Member State of origin). 40
- Exclusions*
- (4) Sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) are subject to – 45
- (a) the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraph 11 of that Part, and

- (b) the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.

*Definitions*

- (5) In this paragraph—

- “the 1968 Brussels Convention” means the Convention on jurisdiction and the enforcement of judgments in civil and commercial matters (including the Protocol annexed to that Convention) signed at Brussels on 27 September 1968; 5
- “the 1973 Hague Convention” means the Convention on the recognition and enforcement of decisions relating to maintenance obligations concluded at The Hague on 2 October 1973; 10
- “the 1989 Lugano Convention” means the Convention on jurisdiction and the enforcement of judgments in civil and commercial matters (including the Protocols annexed to that Convention) opened for signature at Lugano on 16 September 1988 and signed by the United Kingdom on 18 September 1989; 15
- “the 2000 Brussels Regulation” means Council Regulation (EC) No. 44/2001 of 22 December 2000 on jurisdiction and the recognition and enforcement of judgments in civil and commercial matters;
- “the 2007 Lugano Convention” means the Convention on jurisdiction and enforcement of judgments in civil and commercial matters, between the European Community and the Republic of Iceland, the Kingdom of Norway, the Swiss Confederation and the Kingdom of Denmark signed on behalf of the European Community on 30 October 2007; 20
- “the EU Maintenance Regulation” means Council Regulation (EC) No. 4/2009 of 18 December 2008 on jurisdiction, applicable law, recognition and enforcement of decisions and co-operation in matters relating to maintenance obligations; 25
- “maintenance order”, in relation to a convention or regulation listed in this paragraph, means a maintenance judgment within the meaning of that convention or regulation. 30

*Judicial review*

- 17 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to judicial review of an enactment, decision, act or omission. 35
- General exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to—
- (a) the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraph 15 of that Part, and
- (b) the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.
- Specific exclusion: benefit to individual* 40
- (3) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include services provided to an individual in relation to judicial review that does not have the potential to produce a benefit for the individual, a member of the individual’s family or the environment.
- (4) Sub-paragraph (3) does not exclude services provided in relation to a judicial review where the judicial review ceases to have the potential to produce such a benefit after civil legal services have been provided in 45

relation to the judicial review under arrangements made for the purposes of this Part of this Act.

*Specific exclusions: immigration cases*

- (5) Where an issue relating to immigration (including an issue relating to rights described in paragraph 26 of this Part of this Schedule) has been the subject of judicial review or an appeal to a tribunal or court, the services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include services that are provided in relation to judicial review in respect of the same issue or a substantially similar issue in the period of 1 year beginning with the day on which the previous judicial review, or the appeal, was determined. 5 10
- (6) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include services provided in relation to judicial review of a removal direction in respect of an individual where the direction was given not more than 1 year after the latest of the following – 15
- (a) the making of the decision to remove the individual from the United Kingdom by way of such a direction;
  - (b) the refusal of leave to appeal against that decision;
  - (c) the determination or withdrawal of an appeal against that decision.
- (7) Sub-paragraphs (5) and (6) do not exclude services provided to an individual in relation to – 20
- (a) judicial review of a negative decision in relation to an asylum application (within the meaning of the EU Procedures Directive) where there is no right of appeal to the First-tier Tribunal against the decision;
  - (b) judicial review of certification under section 94 or 96 of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (certificate preventing or restricting appeal of immigration decision). 25

*Definitions*

- (8) For the purposes of this paragraph an individual is a member of another individual's family if – 30
- (a) they are relatives (whether of the full blood or half blood or by marriage or civil partnership),
  - (b) they are cohabitants (as defined in Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996), or
  - (c) one has parental responsibility for the other. 35
- (9) In this paragraph –
- “EU Procedures Directive” means Council Directive 2005/85/EC of 1 December 2005 on minimum standards on procedures in Member States for granting and withdrawing refugee status;
- “judicial review” means – 40
- (a) the procedure on an application for judicial review (see section 31 of the Senior Courts Act 1981), but not including the procedure after the application is treated under rules of court as if it were not such an application, and
  - (b) any procedure in which a court, tribunal or other person mentioned in Part 3 of this Schedule is required by an enactment to make a decision applying the principles that are applied by the court on an application for judicial review; 45
- “removal direction” means a direction under –

- (a) paragraphs 8 to 10A of Schedule 2 to the Immigration Act 1971 (removal of persons refused leave to enter and illegal entrants);
- (b) paragraphs 12 to 14 of Schedule 2 to that Act (removal of seamen and aircrew); 5
- (c) paragraph 1 of Schedule 3 to that Act (removal of persons liable to deportation);
- (d) section 10 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (removal of certain persons unlawfully in the United Kingdom);
- (e) section 47 of the Immigration, Asylum and Nationality Act 2006 (removal of persons with statutorily extended leave). 10

*Habeas corpus*

- 18 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to a writ of habeas corpus ad subjiciendum. 15
- Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*Abuse of position or powers by public authority*

- 19 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to abuse by a public authority of its position or powers. 20
- Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraphs 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8 and 12 of that Part.
- (3) But the exclusions described in sub-paragraph (2) are subject to the exception in sub-paragraph (4). 25
- (4) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) include services provided in relation to negligence other than clinical negligence.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.
- Definitions*
- (6) For the purposes of this paragraph, an act or omission by a public authority does not constitute an abuse of its position or powers unless the act or omission – 30
- (a) is deliberate or dishonest, and
  - (b) results in harm to a person or property that was reasonably foreseeable. 35
- (7) In this paragraph –
- “clinical negligence” means breach of a duty of care or trespass to the person committed in the course of the provision of clinical or medical services (including dental or nursing services);
  - “public authority” has the same meaning as in section 6 of the Human Rights Act 1998. 40

*Breach of Convention rights by public authority*

- 20 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to –

<p>(a) a claim in tort, or          (b) a claim for damages (other than a claim in tort),          in respect of an act or omission by a public authority that involves a significant breach of Convention rights by the authority.</p>	5
<i>Exclusions</i>	
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraphs 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8 and 12 of that Part.	
(3) But the exclusions described in sub-paragraph (2) are subject to the exception in sub-paragraph (4).	
(4) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) include services provided in relation to negligence other than clinical negligence.	10
(5) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.	
<i>Definitions</i>	
(6) In this paragraph—	
“clinical negligence” means breach of a duty of care or trespass to the person committed in the course of the provision of clinical or medical services (including dental or nursing services);	15
“Convention rights” has the same meaning as in the Human Rights Act 1998;	
“public authority” has the same meaning as in section 6 of that Act.	20
 <i>Special Immigration Appeals Commission</i>	
21 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to proceedings before the Special Immigration Appeals Commission.	
<i>Exclusions</i>	
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.	25
 <i>Immigration: detention</i>	
22 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to—	
(a) detention under the authority of an immigration officer;	
(b) detention under Schedule 3 to the Immigration Act 1971;	30
(c) detention under section 62 of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002;	
(d) detention under section 36 of the UK Borders Act 2007.	
<i>Exclusions</i>	
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.	35
 <i>Immigration: temporary admission</i>	
23 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to temporary admission to the United Kingdom under—	
(a) paragraph 21 of Schedule 2 to the Immigration Act 1971;	40
(b) section 62 of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.	
<i>Exclusions</i>	



- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*Immigration: residence etc restrictions*

- 24 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to restrictions imposed under –
- (a) paragraph 2(5) or 4 of Schedule 3 to the Immigration Act 1971 (residence etc restrictions pending deportation); 5
  - (b) section 71 of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (residence etc restrictions on asylum-seekers).

*Exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 10

*Immigration: victims of domestic violence and indefinite leave to remain*

- 25 (1) Civil legal services provided to an individual (“I”) in relation to an application by the individual for indefinite leave to remain in the United Kingdom on the grounds that – 15
- (a) I was given leave to enter or remain in the United Kingdom for a limited period as the partner of another individual present and settled in the United Kingdom, and
  - (b) I’s relationship with the other individual broke down permanently as a result of the abuse of I by an associated person. 20

*General exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*Specific exclusion*

- (3) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include attendance at an interview conducted on behalf of the Secretary of State with a view to reaching a decision on an application. 25

*Definitions*

- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph, one individual is a partner of another if – 30
- (a) they are married to each other,
  - (b) they are civil partners of each other, or
  - (c) they are cohabitants.

- (5) In this paragraph – 35
- “abuse” means physical or mental abuse, including –
    - (a) sexual abuse, and
    - (b) abuse in the form of violence, neglect, maltreatment and exploitation;

“associated person”, in relation to an individual, means a person who is associated with the individual within the meaning of section 62 of the Family Law Act 1996; 40

“cohabitant” has the same meaning as in Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996 (see section 62 of that Act);

“indefinite leave to remain in the United Kingdom” means leave to remain in the United Kingdom under the Immigration Act 1971 which is not limited as to duration;

“present and settled in the United Kingdom” has the same meaning as in the rules made under section 3(2) of the Immigration Act 1971. 5

*Immigration: rights to enter and remain*

26 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to rights to enter, and to remain in, the United Kingdom arising from –

- (a) the Refugee Convention;
- (b) Article 2 or 3 of the Human Rights Convention; 10
- (c) the Temporary Protection Directive;
- (d) the Qualification Directive.

*General exclusions*

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 15

*Specific exclusion*

(3) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include attendance at an interview conducted on behalf of the Secretary of State with a view to reaching a decision on a claim in respect of the rights mentioned in that sub-paragraph, except where regulations provide otherwise. 20

*Definitions*

(4) In this paragraph –  
 “the Human Rights Convention” means the Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms, agreed by the Council of Europe at Rome on 4 November 1950 as it has effect for the time being in relation to the United Kingdom; 25

“the Qualification Directive” means Council Directive 2004/83/EC of 29 April 2004 on minimum standards for the qualification and status of third country nationals or stateless persons as refugees or as persons who otherwise need international protection and the content of the protection granted; 30

“the Refugee Convention” means the Convention relating to the Status of Refugees done at Geneva on 28 July 1951 and the Protocol to the Convention;

“the Temporary Protection Directive” means Council Directive 2001/55/EC of 20 July 2001 on minimum standards for giving temporary protection in the event of a mass influx of displaced persons and on measures promoting a balance of efforts between Member States in receiving such persons and bearing the consequences thereof. 35

*Immigration: accommodation for asylum-seekers etc* 40

27 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to the Secretary of State’s powers to provide, or arrange for the provision of, accommodation under –

- (a) section 4 or 95 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (accommodation for persons temporarily admitted and asylum-seekers); 45
- (b) section 17 of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (support for destitute asylum-seekers).

*Exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*Loss of home*

- 28 (1) Civil legal services provided to an individual in relation to— 5  
(a) court orders for sale or possession of the individual’s home, or  
(b) the eviction from the individual’s home of the individual or others.
- (2) Civil legal services provided to an individual in relation to a bankruptcy order against the individual under Part 9 of the Insolvency Act 1986 where— 10  
(a) the individual’s estate includes the individual’s home, and  
(b) the petition for the bankruptcy order is or was presented by a person other than the individual,  
including services provided in relation to a statutory demand under that Part of that Act. 15

*General exclusions*

- (3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) are subject to the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraph 14 of that Part.
- (4) But the exclusions described in sub-paragraph (3) are subject to the exceptions in sub-paragraphs (5) and (6).
- (5) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) include services provided in relation to proceedings on an application under the Trusts of Land and Appointment of Trustees Act 1996 to which section 335A of the Insolvency Act 1986 applies (application by trustee of bankrupt’s estate). 20
- (6) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) include services described in any of paragraphs 3 to 6 or 8 of Part 2 of this Schedule to the extent that they are— 25  
(a) services provided to an individual in relation to a counterclaim in proceedings for a court order for sale or possession of the individual’s home, or  
(b) services provided to an individual in relation to the unlawful eviction from the individual’s home of the individual or others. 30
- (7) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) are subject to the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.

*Specific exclusion*

- (8) The services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include services provided in relation to— 35  
(a) proceedings under the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973;  
(b) proceedings under Chapters 2 and 3 of Part 2 of the Civil Partnership Act 2004 (dissolution, nullity and other proceedings and property and financial arrangements). 40

*Definitions*

- (9) In this paragraph “home”, in relation to an individual, means the house, caravan, houseboat or other vehicle or structure that is the individual’s only or main residence, subject to sub-paragraph (10).

- (10) References in this paragraph to an individual’s home do not include a vehicle or structure occupied by the individual if there are no grounds on which it can be argued –
- (a) that the individual is occupying the vehicle or structure otherwise than as a trespasser, and 5
  - (b) that the individual’s occupation of the vehicle or structure began otherwise than as a trespasser.
- (11) In sub-paragraphs (9) and (10), the references to a caravan, houseboat or other vehicle include the land on which it is located or to which it is moored.
- (12) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (10) individuals occupying, or beginning occupation, of a vehicle or structure as a trespasser include individuals who do so by virtue of –
- (a) title derived from a trespasser, or
  - (b) a licence or consent given by a trespasser or a person deriving title from a trespasser. 15
- (13) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (10) an individual who is occupying a vehicle or structure as a trespasser does not cease to be a trespasser by virtue of being allowed time to leave the vehicle or structure.

*Homelessness*

- 29 (1) Civil legal services provided to an individual who is homeless, or threatened with homelessness, in relation to the provision of accommodation and assistance for the individual under –
- (a) Part 6 of the Housing Act 1996 (allocation of housing accommodation);
  - (b) Part 7 of that Act (homelessness). 25
- Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.
- Definitions*
- (3) In this paragraph “homeless” and “threatened with homelessness” have the same meaning as in section 175 of the Housing Act 1996. 30

*Risk to health or safety in rented home*

- 30 (1) Civil legal services provided to an individual in relation to the removal or reduction of a serious risk of harm to the health or safety of the individual or a relevant member of the individual’s family where –
- (a) the risk arises from a deficiency in the individual’s home,
  - (b) the individual’s home is rented or leased from another person, and
  - (c) the services are provided with a view to securing that the other person makes arrangements to remove or reduce the risk. 35
- Exclusions* 40
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to –
- (a) the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraphs 6 and 8 of that Part, and
  - (b) the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.
- Definitions* 45

- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph –
- (a) a child is a relevant member of an individual’s family if the individual is the child’s parent or has parental responsibility for the child;
  - (b) an adult (“A”) is a relevant member of an individual’s family if – 5
    - (i) they are relatives (whether of the full blood or half blood or by marriage or civil partnership) or cohabitants, and
    - (ii) the individual’s home is also A’s home.
- (4) In this paragraph –
- “adult” means a person aged 18 or over; 10
  - “building” includes part of a building;
  - “child” means a person under the age of 18;
  - “cohabitant” has the same meaning as in Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996 (see section 62(1) of that Act);
  - “deficiency” means any deficiency, whether arising as a result of the construction of a building, an absence of maintenance or repair, or otherwise; 15
  - “harm” includes temporary harm;
  - “health” includes mental health;
  - “home”, in relation to an individual, means the house, caravan, 20
    - houseboat or other structure that is the individual’s only or main residence, together with any garden or ground usually occupied with it.

*Anti-social behaviour*

- 31 (1) Civil legal services provided to an individual in relation to – 25
- (a) an order made in respect of the individual under section 1B of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (“the 1998 Act”);
  - (b) an interim order made in respect of the individual under section 1D of the 1998 Act following an application under section 1B of that Act;
  - (c) an intervention order made in respect of the individual under section 1G of the 1998 Act in connection with an order under section 1B of that Act; 30
  - (d) an anti-social behaviour injunction against the individual under section 153A of the Housing Act 1996.

*Exclusions* 35

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*Protection from harassment*

- 32 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to –
- (a) an injunction under section 3 or 3A of the Protection from Harassment Act 1997; 40
  - (b) the variation or discharge of a restraining order under section 5 or 5A of that Act.

*Exclusions*

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 45

*Gang-related violence*

- 33 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to injunctions under Part 4 of the Policing and Crime Act 2009 (injunctions to prevent gang-related violence).  
*Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 5

*Sexual offences*

- 34 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to a sexual offence, but only where—
- (a) the services are provided to the victim of the offence, or
- (b) the victim of the offence has died and the services are provided to the victim’s personal representative. 10
- Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to—
- (a) the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraphs 1, 2, 3, 8 and 12, and
- (b) the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule. 15
- Definitions*
- (3) In this paragraph—
- “personal representative”, in relation to an individual who has died, means— 20
- (a) a person responsible for administering the individual’s estate under the law of England and Wales, Scotland or Northern Ireland, or
- (b) a person who, under the law of another country or territory, has functions equivalent to those of administering the individual’s estate; 25
- “sexual offence” means—
- (a) an offence under a provision of the Sexual Offences Act 2003, and
- (b) an offence under section 1 of the Protection of Children Act 1978 (indecent photographs of children). 30

*Proceeds of crime*

- 35 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to—
- (a) restraint orders under section 41 of the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 (“the 2002 Act”) including orders under section 41(7) of that Act (orders for ensuring that restraint order is effective); 35
- (b) orders under section 47M of the 2002 Act (detention of property);
- (c) directions under section 54(3) of the 2002 Act (distribution of funds in the hands of a receiver);
- (d) directions under section 62 of the 2002 Act (action to be taken by receiver); 40
- (e) orders under section 67A of the 2002 Act (realising property), including directions under section 67D of that Act (distribution of proceeds of realisation);
- (f) orders under section 72 or 73 of the 2002 Act (compensation); 45

- (g) applications under section 351 of the 2002 Act (discharge or variation of a production order or order to grant entry);
  - (h) applications under section 362 of the 2002 Act (discharge or variation of disclosure order);
  - (i) applications under section 369 of the 2002 Act (discharge or variation of customer information order); 5
  - (j) applications under section 375 of the 2002 Act (discharge or variation of account monitoring orders).
- General exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to – 10
    - (a) the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraph 14 of that Part, and
    - (b) the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.
- Specific exclusions*
- (3) Where a confiscation order has been made under Part 2 of the 2002 Act against a defendant, the services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include services provided to the defendant in relation to – 15
    - (a) directions under section 54(3) of that Act (distribution of funds in the hands of a receiver), or
    - (b) directions under section 67D of that Act (distribution of proceeds of 20 realisation),that relate to property recovered pursuant to the order.
  - (4) Where a confiscation order has been made under Part 2 of the 2002 Act against a defendant and varied under section 29 of that Act, the services described in sub-paragraph (1) do not include services provided in relation to an application by the defendant under section 73 of that Act (compensation). 25
- Inquests*
- 36 (1) Civil legal services provided to an individual in relation to an inquest under the Coroners Act 1988 into the death of a member of the individual’s family. 30
- Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to –
    - (a) the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraph 1 of that Part, and
    - (b) the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule. 35
- Definitions*
- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph an individual is a member of another individual’s family if – 40
    - (a) they are relatives (whether of the full blood or half blood or by marriage or civil partnership),
    - (b) they are cohabitants (as defined in Part 4 of the Family Law Act 1996), or
    - (c) one has parental responsibility for the other.

*Environmental pollution*

- 37 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to injunctions in respect of nuisance arising from prescribed types of pollution of the environment.  
*Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule. 5

*Equality*

- 38 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to contravention of the Equality Act 2010.  
*Exclusions* 10
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to—
- (a) the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of paragraph 15 of that Part, and
  - (b) the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule.

*Cross-border disputes* 15

- 39 (1) Civil legal services provided in relation to proceedings in circumstances in which the services are required to be provided under Council Directive 2002/8/EC of 27 January 2003 to improve access to justice in cross-border disputes by establishing minimum common rules relating to legal aid for such disputes. 20  
*No exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is not subject to the exclusions in Parts 2 and 3 of this Schedule.

*Connected matters*

- 40 (1) Prescribed civil legal services provided, in prescribed circumstances, in connection with the provision of services described in a preceding paragraph of this Part of this Schedule. 25  
*Exclusions*
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to—
- (a) the exclusions in Part 2 of this Schedule, with the exception of prescribed paragraphs of that Part, and 30
  - (b) the exclusion in Part 3 of this Schedule, subject to any additional exceptions from that exclusion that are prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph.

PART 2 35

EXCLUDED SERVICES

The services described in Part 1 of this Schedule do not include the services listed in this Part of this Schedule, except to the extent that Part 1 of this Schedule provides otherwise.

- 1 Civil legal services provided in relation to personal injury or death. 40



---

2	Civil legal services provided in relation to negligence.	
3	Civil legal services provided in relation to assault, battery or false imprisonment.	
4	Civil legal services provided in relation to trespass to goods.	
5	Civil legal services provided in relation to trespass to land.	5
6	Civil legal services provided in relation to damage to property.	
7	Civil legal services provided in relation to defamation or malicious falsehood.	
8	Civil legal services provided in relation to breach of statutory duty.	
9	Civil legal services provided in relation to conveyancing.	10
10	Civil legal services provided in relation to the making of wills.	
11	Civil legal services provided in relation to matters of trust law.	
12	(1) Civil legal services provided in relation to a claim for damages in respect of an act or omission by a public authority that involves a breach of Convention rights by the authority.	15
	(2) In this paragraph – “Convention rights” has the same meaning as in the Human Rights Act 1998; “public authority” has the same meaning as in section 6 of that Act.	
13	Civil legal services provided in relation to matters of company or partnership law.	20
14	Civil legal services provided to an individual in relation to matters arising out of or in connection with – (a) a proposal by that individual to establish a business, (b) the carrying on of a business by that individual (whether or not the business is being carried on at the time the services are provided), or (c) the termination or transfer of a business that was being carried on by that individual.	25
15	Civil legal services provided in relation to a benefit, allowance, payment, credit or pension under – (a) the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992, (b) the Jobseekers Act 1995, (c) the State Pension Credit Act 2002, (d) the Tax Credits Act 2002, (e) the Welfare Reform Act 2007, (f) the Welfare Reform Act 2011, or (g) any other enactment relating to social security.	30 35
16	Civil legal services provided in relation to compensation under the Criminal Injuries Compensation Scheme.	
17	Civil legal services provided in relation to changing an individual’s name.	40

PART 3

ADVOCACY: EXCLUSION AND EXCEPTIONS

The services described in Part 1 of this Schedule do not include advocacy other than the types of advocacy listed in this Part of this Schedule, except to the extent that Part 1 of this Schedule provides otherwise. 5

*Exceptions: courts*

- |   |   |    |
|---|---|----|
| 1 | Advocacy in proceedings in the Supreme Court.   |    |
| 2 | Advocacy in proceedings in the Court of Appeal.   |    |
| 3 | Advocacy in proceedings in the High Court.  |    |
| 4 | Advocacy in proceedings in the Court of Protection to the extent that they concern—   | 10 |
|   | (a) a person’s right to life,   |    |
|   | (b) a person’s liberty or physical safety,  |    |
|   | (c) a person’s medical treatment (within the meaning of the Mental Health Act 1983),  | 15 |
|   | (d) a person’s capacity to marry, to enter into a civil partnership or to enter into sexual relations, or   |    |
|   | (e) a person’s right to family life.  |    |
| 5 | Advocacy in proceedings in a county court.  |    |
| 6 | Advocacy in the following proceedings in the Crown Court—   | 20 |
|   | (a) proceedings for the variation or discharge of an order under section 5 or 5A of the Protection from Harassment Act 1997, and  |    |
|   | (b) proceedings under the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 in relation to matters listed in paragraph 35 of Part 1 of this Schedule.  |    |
| 7 | Advocacy in a magistrates’ court that falls within the description of civil legal services in any of paragraphs 1, 9 to 11, 13 and 14 to 16 of Part 1 of this Schedule. | 25 |
| 8 | Advocacy in the following proceedings in a magistrates’ court—  |    |
|   | (a) proceedings under section 47 of the National Assistance Act 1948,   |    |
|   | (b) proceedings in relation to—   | 30 |
|   | (i) bail under Schedule 2 to the Immigration Act 1971, or   |    |
|   | (ii) arrest under Schedule 2 or 3 to that Act,  |    |
|   | (c) proceedings for the variation or discharge of an order under section 5 or 5A of the Protection from Harassment Act 1997, and  |    |
|   | (d) proceedings under the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 in relation to matters listed in paragraph 35 of Part 1 of this Schedule.  | 35 |

*Exceptions: tribunals*

- |   |   |    |
|---|---|----|
| 9 | Advocacy in proceedings in the First-tier Tribunal under—                     |    |
|   | (a) the Mental Health Act 1983, or  |    |
|   | (b) paragraph 5(2) of the Schedule to the Repatriation of Prisoners Act 1984. | 40 |

- 
- |    |   |          |
|----|---|----------|
| 10 | Proceedings in the Mental Health Review Tribunal for Wales.   |          |
| 11 | Advocacy in proceedings in the First-tier Tribunal under –<br>(a) Schedule 2 to the Immigration Act 1971, or<br>(b) Part 5 of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002.   |          |
| 12 | Advocacy in proceedings in the First-tier Tribunal under –<br>(a) section 40A of the British Nationality Act 1981, or<br>(b) regulation 26 of the Immigration (European Economic Area) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/1003),<br>but only to the extent that the proceedings concern contravention of the Equality Act 2010.  | 5<br>10  |
| 13 | Advocacy in the First-tier Tribunal that falls within the description of civil legal services in paragraph 25 of Part 1 of this Schedule.   |          |
| 14 | Advocacy in proceedings in the First-tier Tribunal under –<br>(a) section 4 or 4A of the Protection of Children Act 1999 (appeals and applications relating to list of barred from regulated activities with children or vulnerable adults),<br>(b) section 86 or 87 of the Care Standards Act 2000 (appeals and applications relating to list of persons unsuitable to work with vulnerable adults),<br>(c) section 32 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (applications relating to disqualification orders), or<br>(d) section 144 of the Education Act 2002 (appeals and reviews relating to direction prohibiting person from teaching etc). | 15<br>20 |
| 15 | Advocacy in proceedings in the Upper Tribunal arising out of proceedings within any of paragraphs 9 to 14 of this Part of this Schedule.  | 25       |
| 16 | Advocacy in proceedings in the Upper Tribunal under section 4 of the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006.   |          |
| 17 | Advocacy in proceedings in the Upper Tribunal under section 11 of the Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 (appeals on a point of law) from decisions made by the First-tier Tribunal or the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales in proceedings under –<br>(a) Part 4 of the Education Act 1996 (special educational needs), or<br>(b) the Equality Act 2010.  | 30       |
| 18 | Advocacy in proceedings which are brought before the Upper Tribunal (wholly or primarily) to exercise its judicial review jurisdiction under section 15 of the Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007.  | 35       |
| 19 | Advocacy where judicial review applications are transferred to the Upper Tribunal from the High Court under section 31A of the Senior Courts Act 1981.  |          |
| 20 | Advocacy in proceedings in the Employment Appeal Tribunal, but only to the extent that the proceedings concern contravention of the Equality Act 2010.  | 40       |

*Other exceptions*

- |    |  |  |
|----|--|--|
| 21 | Advocacy in proceedings in the Special Immigration Appeals Commission. |  |
|----|--|--|

- 
- |    |  |    |
|----|--|----|
| 22 | Advocacy in proceedings in the Proscribed Organisations Appeal Commission.   | 5  |
| 23 | Advocacy in— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) prescribed legal proceedings relating to orders and procedures prescribed under paragraph 1(1)(k) of Part 1 of this Schedule;</li> <li>(b) prescribed legal proceedings relating to orders and procedures prescribed under paragraph 11(1)(g) of Part 1 of this Schedule;</li> <li>(c) prescribed legal proceedings relating to community care services (as defined in paragraph 6 of Part 1 of this Schedule).</li> </ul> | 5  |
| 24 | Advocacy in legal proceedings before any person to whom a case is referred (in whole or in part) in any proceedings within the preceding paragraphs of this Part of this Schedule.   | 10 |

#### PART 4

##### INTERPRETATION

- |   |   |    |
|---|---|----|
| 1 | For the purposes of this Part of this Act, civil legal services are described in Part 1 of this Schedule if they are described in one of the paragraphs of that Part (other than in an exclusion), even if they are (expressly or impliedly) excluded from another paragraph of that Part.  | 15 |
| 2 | References in this Schedule to an Act or instrument, or a provision of an Act or instrument— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) are references to the Act, instrument or provision as amended from time to time, and</li> <li>(b) include the Act, instrument or provision as applied by another Act or instrument (with or without modifications).</li> </ul>  | 20 |
| 3 | References in this Schedule to services provided in relation to an act, omission or other matter of a particular description (however expressed) include services provided in relation to an act, omission or other matter alleged to be of that description.   | 25 |
| 4 | References in this Schedule to services provided in relation to proceedings, orders and other matters include services provided when such proceedings, orders and matters are contemplated.   | 30 |
| 5 | (1) Where a paragraph of Part 1, 2 or 3 of this Schedule describes services that consist of or include services provided in relation to proceedings, the description is to be treated as including, in particular— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) services provided in relation to related bail proceedings,</li> <li>(b) services provided in relation to preliminary or incidental proceedings,</li> <li>(c) services provided in relation to a related appeal or reference to a court, tribunal or other person, and</li> <li>(d) services provided in relation to the enforcement of decisions in the proceedings.</li> </ul> | 35 |
|   | (2) Regulations may make provision specifying whether proceedings are or are not to be regarded as preliminary or incidental for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1).   | 40 |
| 6 | For the purposes of this Schedule, regulations may make provision about—  | 45 |

- (a) when services are provided in relation to a matter;
  - (b) when matters arise under a particular enactment;
  - (c) when proceedings are proceedings under a particular enactment.
- 7 In this Schedule “enactment” includes –
- (a) an enactment contained in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978), and 5
  - (b) an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under, an Act or Measure of the National Assembly for Wales.

## SCHEDULE 2

Section 23

### CRIMINAL LEGAL AID: MOTOR VEHICLE ORDERS 10

#### *Amounts payable in connection with criminal legal aid*

- 1 (1) This Schedule makes provision about the recovery of –
- (a) an amount payable in connection with the provision of criminal legal aid which is unpaid after the time when it is required to be paid under section 22, 15
  - (b) interest in respect of such an amount which is required to be paid under that section, and
  - (c) an amount required to be paid under section 23 in respect of costs incurred in connection with the enforcement of an obligation to pay an amount or interest described in paragraph (a) or (b). 20
- (2) Such amounts and interest are referred to in this Schedule as “relevant overdue amounts”.
- (3) In this Schedule “criminal legal aid” means –
- (a) advice and assistance required to be made available under section 12 or 14, and 25
  - (b) representation required to be made available made under section 15.

#### *Recovery by means of motor vehicle orders*

- 2 (1) Regulations under section 23 may authorise a court to make motor vehicle orders in respect of an individual for the purpose of enabling a relevant overdue amount required to be paid by the individual to be recovered by the person to whom the amount is due. 30
- (2) Regulations that make such provision are referred to in this Schedule as “MVO regulations”.
- (3) In this Schedule “court” means the High Court, a county court or a magistrates’ court. 35

#### *Motor vehicle orders*

- 3 (1) In this Schedule “motor vehicle order” means –
- (a) a clamping order;
  - (b) a vehicle sale order.



- (a) that the failure to pay the relevant overdue amount is attributable to the individual’s wilful refusal or culpable neglect, and
  - (b) that the value of the motor vehicle or vehicles to be clamped, if sold, would be likely to be an amount which exceeds half of the estimated recoverable amount. 5
- (2) In this paragraph “the estimated recoverable amount” means the aggregate of—
- (a) the relevant overdue amount, and
  - (b) the amount of the likely charges due under MVO regulations in relation to the motor vehicle or vehicles. 10

*Ownership of motor vehicles*

- 6 (1) MVO regulations must provide that a clamping order must not be made except in relation to a motor vehicle which is owned by the individual liable to pay the relevant overdue amount.
- (2) For this purpose a motor vehicle is owned by an individual if the individual has an interest in the motor vehicle. 15

*Motor vehicles used by disabled persons*

- 7 (1) MVO regulations must provide that an immobilisation device may not be fitted to a motor vehicle—
- (a) which displays a current disabled person’s badge or a current recognised badge, or
  - (b) in relation to which there are reasonable grounds for believing that it is used for the carriage of a disabled person. 20
- (2) In this paragraph—
- “disabled person’s badge” means a badge issued, or having effect as if issued, under regulations under section 21 of the Chronically Sick and Disabled Persons Act 1970 (badges for display on motor vehicles used by disabled persons); 25
  - “recognised badge” has the meaning given by section 21A of the Chronically Sick and Disabled Persons Act 1970 (recognition of badges issued outside Great Britain). 30

*Restrictions on making vehicle sale orders*

- 8 MVO regulations must provide that, where a motor vehicle has been clamped under a clamping order, no vehicle sale order may be made in respect of the motor vehicle before the end of a prescribed period. 35

SCHEDULE 3

LEGAL AID FOR LEGAL PERSONS

*Legal persons*

- 1 In this Schedule “legal person” means a person other than an individual.

*Exceptional case determinations*

- 2 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule, in relation to a legal person and civil legal services, advice, assistance or representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings, an exceptional case determination is a determination that sub-paragraph (2) or (3) is satisfied. 5
- (2) This sub-paragraph is satisfied if it is necessary to make the services available to the legal person under this Part because failure to do so would be a breach of –
- (a) the person’s Convention rights (within the meaning of the Human Rights Act 1998), or 10
- (b) any rights of the person to the provision of legal services that are enforceable EU rights.
- (3) This sub-paragraph is satisfied if it is appropriate to make the services available to the legal person under this Part, in the particular circumstances of the case, having regard to any risk that failure to do so would be such a breach. 15

*Civil legal aid*

- 3 (1) Civil legal services are to be available to a legal person under this Part only if the Director –
- (a) has made an exceptional case determination in relation to the person and the services, and 20
- (b) has determined that the person qualifies for the services in accordance with this Part,  
(and has not withdrawn either determination).
- (2) Sections 10 and 11(1) apply in relation to a determination under sub-paragraph (1)(b) as they apply in relation to a determination under section 9(2)(b). 25
- (3) Subsections (2) to (6) of section 11 apply in relation to a determination under this paragraph as they apply in relation to a determination under section 9.
- (4) In sections 10 and 11 as applied by this paragraph, references to an individual include a legal person. 30

*Advice and assistance for criminal proceedings*

- 4 (1) Regulations may provide that prescribed advice and assistance is to be available under this Part to a legal person described in sub-paragraph (2) if – 35
- (a) prescribed conditions are met,
- (b) the Director has made an exceptional case determination in relation to the person and the advice and assistance (and has not withdrawn that determination), and
- (c) the Director has determined that the legal person qualifies for such advice and assistance in accordance with the regulations (and has not withdrawn that determination). 40
- (2) Those legal persons are –
- (a) legal persons who are involved in investigations which may lead to criminal proceedings, and 45



- (b) legal persons who are before a court, tribunal or other person in criminal proceedings.
- (3) Subsections (3) to (9) of section 14 apply in relation to regulations under this paragraph (and decisions made under such regulations) as they apply in relation to regulations under that section (and decisions made under such regulations). 5
- (4) In those subsections as applied by this paragraph, references to an individual include a legal person.
- (5) In this paragraph “assistance” includes, in particular, assistance in the form of advocacy. 10

*Representation for criminal proceedings*

- 5 (1) Representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings is to be available under this Part to a legal person if –
  - (a) the person is a specified legal person in relation to the proceedings, or 15
  - (b) the proceedings involve the person resisting an appeal to the Crown Court otherwise than in an official capacity, and the conditions in sub-paragraph (2) are met.
- (2) Those conditions are that the Director –
  - (a) has made an exceptional case determination in relation to the legal person and representation for the purposes of the proceedings, and 20
  - (b) has determined (provisionally or otherwise) that the legal person qualifies for such representation in accordance with this Part, (and has not withdrawn either determination).
- (3) Where a legal person qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings, representation is also to be available to the legal person for the purposes of any preliminary or incidental proceedings. 25
- (4) Regulations under section 15(4) and (5) apply for the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) as they apply for the purposes of section 15(3), except to the extent that the regulations provide otherwise. 30
- (5) Section 16(1)(b) applies in relation to an exceptional case determination under sub-paragraph (2)(a) as it applies in relation to a determination under section 15.
- (6) Paragraphs (a) and (b) of section 16(1) apply in relation to a determination under sub-paragraph (2)(b) as they apply in relation to a determination under section 15. 35
- (7) Subsections (2) to (7) of section 17 apply in relation to a determination under sub-paragraph (2) (and a decision in relation to the interests of justice for the purposes of such a determination) as they apply in relation to a determination under section 15 (and a decision for the purposes of such a determination). 40
- (8) The Director may not make a provisional determination under sub-paragraph (2)(b) unless authorised to do so by regulations under sub-paragraph (9). 45

- (9) Regulations may provide that the Director may make a provisional determination that a legal person qualifies under this Part for representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings where –
- (a) the legal person is involved in an investigation which may result in criminal proceedings, 5
  - (b) the determination is made for the purposes of criminal proceedings that may result from the investigation, and
  - (c) any prescribed conditions are met.
- (10) Subsections (2) and (3) of section 19 apply in relation to regulations under sub-paragraph (9) (and determinations and decisions made under such regulations) as they apply in relation to regulations under that section (and determinations and decisions made under such regulations). 10
- (11) In sections 16, 17 and 19 as applied by this paragraph –
- (a) references to an individual include a legal person,
  - (b) references to the relevant authority have effect as if they were references to the Director, and 15
  - (c) the reference in section 19(2)(d) to a determination made by the Director or a court in reliance on section 17 or 18 has effect as if it were a reference to a determination by the Director under sub-paragraph (2)(b) made otherwise than in reliance on regulations under sub-paragraph (9). 20
- (12) Regulations may prescribe circumstances in which making representation available to a legal person for the purposes of criminal proceedings is to be taken to be in the interests of justice for the purposes of a determination under this paragraph. 25
- (13) In this paragraph “specified legal person”, in relation to criminal proceedings, means a description of legal person specified in regulations in relation to those proceedings.

*Financial resources*

- 6 Section 20 applies for the purposes of a determination under paragraph 3(1)(b) or 5(2)(b), or under regulations under paragraph 4 or 5(9), as if the references to an individual included a legal person. 30

*Contributions and costs*

- 7 In sections 22, 23, 24 and 25 and Schedule 2, references to an individual include a legal person for whom services are made available under this Part in accordance with this Schedule or regulations under this Schedule. 35
- 8 In Schedule 2, references to criminal legal aid include advice, assistance and representation required to be made available under paragraph 4 or 5 of this Schedule.

*Providers of services etc*

- 9 (1) Section 26 applies in relation to the provision of services to a legal person in accordance with this Schedule or regulations under this Schedule as it applies in relation to the provision of services to an individual under this Part. 40

- (2) In that section as applied by this paragraph –
- (a) references to an individual include a legal person,
  - (b) the reference to a determination under section 15 includes a determination under paragraph 5(2)(b) of this Schedule, and
  - (c) the reference to regulations under section 14 includes regulations under paragraph 4 of this Schedule. 5
- (3) In sections 27, 28 and 29, references to an individual include a legal person for whom services are made available under this Part in accordance with this Schedule or regulations under this Schedule.

*Supplementary matters* 10

- 10 (1) In sections 33, 34 and 40(2), references to an individual include a legal person for whom services are made available under this Part in accordance with this Schedule or regulations under this Schedule or who is seeking the provision of such services.

SCHEDULE 4

Section 37 15

TRANSFER OF EMPLOYEES AND PROPERTY ETC OF LEGAL SERVICES COMMISSION

PART 1

TRANSFER OF EMPLOYEES ETC

*Transfer*

- 1 (1) An individual who is an employee of the Legal Services Commission (“the LSC”) immediately before the transfer day becomes employed in the civil service of the State on that day. 20
- (2) The terms and conditions of the individual’s contract of employment immediately before the transfer day have effect, on and after that day, as if they were terms and conditions of the individual’s employment in the civil service of the State, subject to paragraph 4(1) and (2). 25
- (3) All of the rights, powers, duties and liabilities of the LSC in connection with the individual’s employment are transferred to the Crown on the transfer day, subject to paragraph 4(1) and (2).
- (4) Anything done (or having effect as if done) before the transfer day – 30
- (a) by or in relation to the LSC, and
  - (b) for the purposes of, or in connection with, anything transferred by virtue of sub-paragraphs (1) to (3),
- is to have effect, so far as necessary for continuing its effect on and after that day, as if done by or in relation to the Crown. 35
- (5) Anything which is in the process of being done immediately before the transfer day –
- (a) by or in relation to the LSC, and
  - (b) for the purposes of, or in connection with, anything transferred by virtue of sub-paragraphs (1) to (3), 40

may be continued by or in relation to the Crown.

- (6) A reference to the LSC in a document, including an enactment, constituting or relating to anything transferred by virtue of sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) is to have effect, so far as is necessary for giving effect to those sub-paragraphs, as a reference to the Crown.

5

*Continuity of employment*

2 A transfer under paragraph 1 does not break the continuity of the individual's employment and accordingly –

- (a) the individual is not to be regarded for the purposes of Part 11 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (redundancy) as having been dismissed by reason of that transfer, and
- (b) the individual's period of employment with the LSC counts as a period of employment in the civil service of the State for the purposes of that Act.

10

*Right to object to transfer*

15

3 (1) This paragraph has effect where, before the transfer day, an individual who is an employee of the LSC informs the LSC or the Lord Chancellor that the individual objects to becoming employed in the civil service of the State by virtue of paragraph 1(1).

(2) Where this paragraph has effect –

20

- (a) the individual does not become employed in the civil service of the State by virtue of paragraph 1(1),
- (b) the rights, powers, duties and liabilities under the individual's contract of employment do not transfer by virtue of paragraph 1(3),
- (c) the individual's contract of employment terminates immediately before the transfer day, and
- (d) the individual is not to be treated, for any purpose, as having been dismissed by the LSC by reason of the termination of the contract under this paragraph.

25

*Pension schemes and compensation schemes*

30

4 (1) On and after the transfer day, the terms and conditions of employment of an individual who is employed in the civil service of the State by virtue of paragraph 1(1) do not include any term or condition that was part of the individual's contract of employment immediately before the transfer day and that relates to –

35

- (a) an occupational pension scheme,
- (b) a compensation scheme, or
- (c) rights, powers, duties or liabilities under or in connection with such a scheme.

(2) Accordingly, paragraph 1(3) does not apply in relation to rights, powers, duties or liabilities under or in connection with an occupational pension scheme or a compensation scheme.

40

(3) The Lord Chancellor may make one or more schemes providing for the transfer to the Lord Chancellor or the Secretary of State of the LSC's rights, powers, duties and liabilities under or in connection with –

45

- (a) an occupational pension scheme, or
  - (b) a compensation scheme,whether the rights, powers, duties and liabilities arise under the occupational pension scheme or compensation scheme, under an enactment, under a contract of employment or otherwise. 5
- (4) A transfer scheme may provide that anything done (or having effect as if done) before the day on which the transfer scheme takes effect –
  - (a) by or in relation to the LSC, and
  - (b) for the purposes of, or in connection with, anything transferred by virtue of the transfer scheme,is to have effect, so far as is necessary for continuing its effect on and after that day, as if done by or in relation to the transferee. 10
- (5) A transfer scheme may provide that anything which is in the process of being done immediately before the day on which the transfer scheme takes effect –
  - (a) by or in relation to the LSC, and
  - (b) for the purposes of, or in connection with, anything transferred by virtue of the transfer scheme,may be continued by or in relation to the transferee. 15
- (6) A transfer scheme may provide that a reference to the LSC in a document, including an enactment, constituting or relating to anything transferred by virtue of the scheme is to have effect, so far as is necessary for giving effect to that scheme, as a reference to the transferee. 20
- (7) A transfer scheme may, so far as is necessary for giving effect to that scheme, provide that an enactment that applies in relation to compensation schemes or occupational pension schemes applies to a compensation scheme or occupational pension scheme that is the subject of the transfer scheme, the members of such a scheme or the transferee with modifications specified in the transfer scheme. 25
- (8) A transfer scheme may –
  - (a) amend or otherwise modify a compensation scheme that is the subject of the transfer scheme, and
  - (b) create, modify or remove rights, powers, duties or liabilities under or in connection with such a scheme.30
- (9) The power under sub-paragraph (8) includes power to amend or otherwise modify any instrument relating to the constitution, management or operation of a compensation scheme. 35
- (10) Transfer schemes amending or otherwise modifying a compensation scheme have effect in spite of any provision (of any nature) which would otherwise prevent or restrict the amendment or modification. 40
- (11) A transfer scheme may include consequential, incidental, supplementary, transitional, transitory and saving provision.
- (12) In this paragraph –
  - “compensation scheme” means so much of any scheme as makes provision for payment by way of compensation on or in respect of termination of employment;45

“occupational pension scheme” has the same meaning as in the Pension Schemes Act 1993;

“transfer scheme” means a scheme made under sub-paragraph (3).

*Power to merge LSC occupational pension schemes*

- |   |   |    |
|---|---|----|
| 5 | (1) The Lord Chancellor may make a scheme providing for the merger of LSC occupational pension schemes.   | 5  |
|   | (2) A scheme under this paragraph may in particular –   |    |
|   | (a) provide for the assets and liabilities of one LSC occupational pension scheme to become assets and liabilities of another,  |    |
|   | (b) create, modify or remove rights, powers, duties or liabilities under or in connection with an LSC occupational pension scheme,  | 10 |
|   | (c) provide for the winding up of an LSC occupational pension scheme,   |    |
|   | (d) provide for references to one LSC occupational pension scheme in a document, including an enactment, to have effect as references to another, and   | 15 |
|   | (e) include consequential, incidental, supplementary, transitional, transitory and saving provision.  |    |
|   | (3) A scheme under this paragraph may in particular amend or otherwise modify –   |    |
|   | (a) the trust deed of an LSC occupational pension scheme,   | 20 |
|   | (b) rules of an LSC occupational pension scheme, and  |    |
|   | (c) any other instrument relating to the constitution, management or operation of an LSC occupational pension scheme.   |    |
|   | (4) A scheme under this paragraph must ensure that the merger of the LSC occupational pension schemes does not, to any extent, deprive members of the LSC occupational pension schemes, or other beneficiaries under those schemes, of rights that accrue to them under those schemes before the merger takes effect. | 25 |
|   | (5) Subject to sub-paragraph (4), a scheme under this paragraph has effect in spite of any provision (of any nature) which would otherwise prevent the merger of the LSC occupational pension schemes.  | 30 |
|   | (6) In this paragraph –   |    |
|   | “LSC occupational pension scheme” means an occupational pension scheme under which –  |    |
|   | (a) the LSC has rights, powers, duties or liabilities, or   | 35 |
|   | (b) the Lord Chancellor or the Secretary of State has rights, powers, duties or liabilities by virtue of a scheme under paragraph 4(3);   |    |
|   | “occupational pension scheme” has the same meaning as in the Pension Schemes Act 1993.  | 40 |

PART 2

TRANSFER OF PROPERTY ETC

*Transfer of interests in land*

- 6 (1) The LSC’s interests in land are by virtue of this sub-paragraph transferred to the Secretary of State for Communities and Local Government on the transfer day. 5
- (2) Anything done (or having effect as if done) before the transfer day –
- (a) by or in relation to the LSC, and
  - (b) for the purposes of, or in connection with, anything transferred by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), 10
- is to have effect, so far as is necessary for continuing its effect on and after that day, as if done by or in relation to the Secretary of State for Communities and Local Government.
- (3) Anything which is in the process of being done immediately before the transfer day – 15
- (a) by or in relation to the LSC, and
  - (b) for the purposes of, or in connection with, anything transferred by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), 20
- may be continued by or in relation to the Secretary of State for Communities and Local Government.
- (4) A reference to the LSC in a document, including an enactment, constituting or relating to anything transferred by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) is to have effect, so far as is necessary for giving effect to that sub-paragraph, as a reference to the Secretary of State for Communities and Local Government.
- (5) In this paragraph – 25
- “interest in land” means –
    - (a) an estate or interest in land, and
    - (b) any rights, powers, duties or liabilities of the LSC in connection with such an estate or interest, 30  - but does not include a charge on an estate or interest in land;
  - “land” includes buildings and other structures. 30

*Transfer of other property, rights and liabilities*

- 7 (1) The property, rights, powers, duties and liabilities of the LSC are by virtue of this sub-paragraph transferred to the Lord Chancellor on the transfer day.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to – 35
- (a) property, rights, powers, duties and liabilities transferred by virtue of paragraph 1 or 6, or
  - (b) rights, powers, duties and liabilities described in paragraph 4(3).
- (3) Anything done (or having effect as if done) before the transfer day – 40
- (a) by or in relation to the LSC, and
  - (b) for the purposes of, or in connection with, anything transferred by virtue of sub-paragraph (1),

is to have effect, so far as is necessary for continuing its effect on and after that day, as if done by or in relation to the Lord Chancellor.

- (4) Anything which is in the process of being done immediately before the transfer day –
- (a) by or in relation to the LSC, and 5
  - (b) for the purposes of, or in connection with, anything transferred by virtue of sub-paragraph (1),
- may be continued by or in relation to the Lord Chancellor.
- (5) A reference to the LSC in a document, including an enactment, constituting or relating to anything transferred by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) is to have effect, so far as is necessary for giving effect to that sub-paragraph, as a reference to the Lord Chancellor. 10

### PART 3

#### SUPPLEMENTARY

#### *Disapplying restrictions on transfer* 15

- 8 Paragraphs 1, 6 and 7 and schemes under paragraph 4 have effect in relation to property, rights, powers, duties and liabilities in spite of any provision (of any nature) which would otherwise prevent or restrict their transfer.

#### *Certificate*

- 9 A certificate issued by the Lord Chancellor stating that anything specified in the certificate has vested in a person specified in the certificate by virtue of any of paragraphs 1, 6 and 7 or a scheme under paragraph 4 is conclusive evidence of that fact for all purposes. 20

#### *Validity*

- 10 The transfer of property, rights, powers, duties or liabilities by any of paragraphs 1, 6 and 7 or a scheme under paragraph 4 does not affect the validity of anything done by or in relation to the LSC before that paragraph or scheme has effect. 25

#### *Power to make further provision*

- 11 (1) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations make consequential, supplementary, incidental, transitional, transitory or saving provision in connection with – 30
- (a) transfers effected by this Schedule, or
  - (b) schemes made under this Schedule.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, include provision modifying an enactment (whenever passed or made), including this Schedule. 35

#### *Interpretation*

- 12 In this Schedule –
- “the LSC” means the Legal Services Commission;
  - “the transfer day” means the day on which section 1 comes into force; 40



“enactment” means an enactment contained in an Act or an instrument made under an Act (and “Act” includes an Act or Measure of the National Assembly for Wales).

SCHEDULE 5

Section 38

LEGAL AID: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

5

PART 1

AMENDMENTS

*Public Records Act 1958 (c. 51)*

- 1 In Schedule 1 to the Public Records Act 1958 (definition of public records), in Part 1 of the Table at the end of paragraph 3, in the second column omit “Legal Services Commission.” 10

*Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (c. 13)*

- 2 In Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (departments etc subject to investigation) omit “Legal Services Commission.”

*Criminal Appeal Act 1968 (c. 19)*

15

- 3 In section 50 of the Criminal Appeal Act 1968 (meaning of “sentence”), in subsection (3) for “under section 17 of the Access to Justice Act 1999” substitute “relating to a requirement to make a payment under regulations under section 22 or 23 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 20

*Children and Young Persons Act 1969 (c. 54)*

- 4 (1) Section 23(5A) of the Children and Young Persons Act 1969 (restrictions on imposing security requirement on child or young person who is not legally represented) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In paragraph (a) –
- (a) for the words from the beginning to “but the right” substitute “representation was provided to the child or young person under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 for the purposes of the proceedings but”, and
- (b) for “to be granted such a right” substitute “for such representation”. 30
- (3) In paragraph (aa) for “to be granted a right to it” substitute “for such representation”.
- 5 (1) In section 23 of that Act as it has effect pursuant to section 98 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (restrictions on remand of boy who is not legally represented), subsection (4A) is amended as follows. 35
- (2) In paragraph (a) –
- (a) for the words from the beginning to “but the right” substitute “representation was provided to the person under Part 1 of the Legal

	Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 for the purposes of the proceedings but”, and	
	(b) for “to be granted such a right” substitute “for such representation”.	
	(3) In paragraph (aa) for “to be granted a right to it” substitute “for such representation”.	5
<i>Attachment of Earnings Act 1971 (c. 32)</i>		
6	In section 1(3)(c) of the Attachment of Earnings Act 1971 (cases in which magistrates’ court may make attachment of earnings order) for the words from “paid by” to the end substitute “paid under regulations under section 22 or 23 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.	10
<i>Solicitors Act 1974 (c. 47)</i>		
7	The Solicitors Act 1974 is amended as follows.	
8	(1) Section 47 (jurisdiction and powers of Tribunal) is amended as follows.	
	(2) In subsections (2)(d), (2B) and (2D) for “providing representation funded by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Criminal Defence Service” substitute “criminal legal aid work”.	15
	(3) In subsection (2A) –	
	(a) for “providing representation” substitute “criminal legal aid work”, and	20
	(b) for “funded by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Community Legal Service or Criminal Defence Service” substitute “provided under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.	
	(4) After subsection (3B) insert –	25
	“(3C) In this section “criminal legal aid work” means the provision under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 of –	
	(a) advice or assistance described in section 12 or 14 of that Act, or	30
	(b) representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings.”	
9	In section 49(3) (appeals from Tribunal) for “providing representation funded by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Criminal Defence Service” substitute “criminal legal aid work (as defined in that section)”.	
<i>House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)</i>		
10	In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (bodies of which all members are disqualified) omit “The Legal Services Commission.”	35
<i>Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25)</i>		
11	In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (bodies of which all members are disqualified) omit “The Legal Services Commission.”	40

*Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 (c. 43)*

- 12 The Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 is amended as follows.
- 13 In section 8(4) (matters which may be contained in report of committal proceedings without an order) for paragraph (i) substitute –
- “(i) whether, for the purposes of the proceedings, representation was provided to the accused or any of the accused under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.” 5
- 14 In section 8A(5) (power to make ruling at pre-trial hearing) –
- (a) in paragraph (a) for the words from “to be granted” to “Criminal Defence Service” substitute “to be provided with representation for the purposes of the proceedings under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”, and 10
- (b) in paragraph (b) for “the Legal Services Commission must decide whether or not to grant him that right” substitute “the necessary arrangements must be made for him to apply for it and, where appropriate, obtain it”. 15
- 15 In section 8C(7) (matters to which reporting restrictions do not apply) for paragraph (g) substitute –
- “(g) whether, for the purposes of the proceedings, representation was provided to the accused or any of the accused under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.” 20
- 16 In section 92(1)(b) (exception to restriction on power to impose imprisonment for default) for the words from “under section 17(2)” to “criminal case” substitute “made by a court under regulations under section 22 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 (payment by individual in respect of legal aid)”. 25
- 17 In section 130(3) (powers of alternate court on transfer of remand hearing) for the words from “all the powers” to end substitute “all of the following powers which that court would have had but for the order –
- (a) powers in relation to further remand (whether in custody or on bail), and
- (b) powers under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.” 30 35
- 18 In section 145A(4) (rules about costs orders against legal representatives) for “the Legal Services Commission” substitute “the Lord Chancellor under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.

*Senior Courts Act 1981 (c. 54)*

40

- 19 The Senior Courts Act 1981 is amended as follows.
- 20 In section 28(4) (appeals from Crown Court and inferior courts) for “an order under section 17 of the Access to Justice Act 1999” substitute “a requirement to make a payment under regulations under section 22 or 23 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 45

- 21 In section 29(6) (mandatory, prohibiting and quashing orders) for “orders under section 17 of the Access to Justice Act 1999” substitute “requirements to make payments under regulations under section 22 or 23 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.

*Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (c. 23)*

5

- 22 Part 2 of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (costs in criminal cases) is amended as follows.

- 23 In section 19(2)(b) (matters of which account to be taken when making order as to costs) for “any grant of a right to representation funded by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Criminal Defence Service” substitute “of whether, for the purposes of the proceedings, representation has been provided under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.

10

- 24 In section 20(2) (regulations) for “by the Legal Services Commission or out of central funds” substitute “by the Lord Chancellor under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 or out of central funds in accordance with a costs order”.

15

- 25 (1) Section 21 (interpretation) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (1), in the definition of “legally assisted person” for the words from “to whom” to the end of the definition substitute “for whom advice, assistance or representation is provided under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.

20

- (3) In subsection (4A)(a) for the words from “not” to “Service” substitute “not to include the cost of advice, assistance or representation provided to the person under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.

25

- (4) In subsection (4A)(b) for the words from “the cost” to the end substitute “the cost of such advice, assistance or representation”.

30

*Child Abduction and Custody Act 1985 (c. 60)*

- 26 In section 11 of the Child Abduction and Custody Act 1985 (cost of applications for child custody or access), for paragraph (a) (but not the “or” following it) substitute –

- “(a) the provision of any civil legal services (within the meaning of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011) under arrangements made for the purposes of that Part of that Act,”.

35

*Administration of Justice Act 1985 (c. 61)*

- 27 Part 3 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 (legal aid) is amended as follows.

40

- 28 In section 40(1) (legal aid complaints) for the words from “funded by” to “Criminal Defence Service” substitute “under arrangements made for the

- purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.
- 29 In section 41(2) (reduction of fees payable where legal aid complaint made) –
- (a) for “Legal Services Commission” substitute “Lord Chancellor”, and 5
  - (b) for “by him as part of the Community Legal Service or Criminal Defence Service” substitute “by the barrister under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.
- 30 (1) Section 42 (exclusion of barristers from legal aid work) is amended as follows. 10
- (2) In subsections (1) and (3) for “providing representation funded by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Criminal Defence Service” substitute “criminal legal aid work”.
- (3) At the end insert – 15
- “(5) In this section “criminal legal aid work” means the provision under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 of –
- (a) advice or assistance described in section 12 or 14 of that Act, or 20
  - (b) representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings.”
- 31 In section 43(3) (reduction of costs payable where legal aid complaint made) –
- (a) for “Legal Services Commission” substitute “Lord Chancellor”, and
  - (b) for “as part of the Community Legal Service or Criminal Defence Service” substitute “under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 25
- 32 In paragraph 20(1) of Schedule 2 (powers of Tribunal in respect of legal aid complaints) for “providing representation funded by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Criminal Defence Service” substitute “criminal legal aid work (as defined in that section)”. 30
- Housing Act 1985 (c. 68)*
- 33 In section 170(5) of the Housing Act 1985 (charges to recover costs of assistance in legal proceedings) – 35
- (a) for “section 10(7) of the Access to Justice Act 1999” substitute “section 24 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”, and
  - (b) for “Legal Services Commission” substitute “Lord Chancellor”.
- Criminal Justice Act 1987 (c. 38)* 40
- 34 The Criminal Justice Act 1987 is amended as follows.
- 35 In section 4(1) (notices of transfer to Crown Court) for “paragraph 2 of Schedule 3 to the Access to Justice Act 1999” substitute “regulations under

	section 18 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.	
36	In section 11(12) (matters to which reporting restrictions do not apply) for paragraph (h) substitute – “(h) whether, for the purposes of the proceedings, representation was provided to the accused or any of the accused under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.”	5
<i>Housing Act 1988 (c. 50)</i>		
37	In section 82(4) of the Housing Act 1988 (charges to recover costs of assistance in legal proceedings) – (a) for “section 10(7) of the Access to Justice Act 1999” substitute “section 24 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”, and (b) for “Legal Services Commission” substitute “Lord Chancellor”.	10  15
<i>Children Act 1989 (c. 41)</i>		
38	In section 25(6) of the Children Act 1989 (child without legal representation not to be placed in secure accommodation without having been informed of right to apply for legal aid), for the words from “representation” to “Criminal Defence Service” substitute “the provision of representation under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.	20
<i>Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41)</i>		
39	(1) Section 31B of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (advocates and litigators employed by Legal Services Commission) is amended as follows. (2) In the heading of the section for “Legal Services Commission” substitute “Lord Chancellor”. (3) In subsection (1) for paragraph (b) substitute – “(b) is employed by the Lord Chancellor, or by any body established and maintained by the Lord Chancellor, under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.”	25   30
<i>Criminal Justice Act 1991 (c. 53)</i>		
40	In section 53(3) of the Criminal Justice Act 1991 (effect of notices transferring certain cases involving children) for “paragraph 2 of Schedule 3 to the Access to Justice Act 1999” substitute “regulations under section 18 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.	35
<i>Social Security Administration Act 1992 (c. 5)</i>		
41	(1) Section 108(7) of the Social Security Administration Act 1992 is amended as follows. (2) For “Legal Services Commission”, in the first place, substitute “Lord Chancellor”.	40

- (3) In paragraph (a) –
- (a) at the end of sub-paragraph (iii) for “and” substitute “or”, and
  - (b) after that sub-paragraph insert –
    - “(iv) was provided with civil legal services (within the meaning of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011) under arrangements made for the purposes of that Part of that Act; and”.
- (4) In paragraph (b) after sub-paragraph (iii) insert “or
- (iv) under regulations under section 22 or 23 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 in respect of civil legal services (within the meaning of Part 1 of that Act) provided under arrangements made for the purposes of that Part of that Act.”.

*Criminal Procedure and Investigations Act 1996 (c. 25)*

- 42 In section 37(9) of the Criminal Procedure and Investigations Act 1996 (matters to which reporting restrictions do not apply) for paragraph (g) substitute –
- “(g) whether, for the purposes of the proceedings, representation was provided to the accused or any of the accused under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.”

*Family Law Act 1996 (c. 27)*

- 43 The Family Law Act 1996 is amended as follows. 25
- 44 (1) Section 8 (attendance at information meetings) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (9)(h) for “services funded by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Community Legal Service” substitute “civil legal services under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 30
  - (3) In subsection (12) for “funded for him by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Community Legal Service” substitute “provided for the person under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.
  - (4) In subsection (13), after “section” insert – 35
    - ““civil legal services” has the meaning given in Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011;”.
- 45 (1) Section 23 (provision of marriage counselling) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3) for “funded for them by the Legal Services Commission as part of the Community Legal Service” substitute “provided for them under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 40
  - (3) Omit subsection (8) (powers of Legal Services Commission).





- proceedings under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 but”, and
- (b) for “to be granted such a right” substitute “for such representation”.
- (3) In paragraph (aa) for “to be granted a right to it” substitute “for such representation”. 5
- 54 In section 155(8) (alteration of Crown Court sentence) for “under section 17(2) of the Access to Justice Act 1999” substitute “relating to a requirement to make a payment under regulations under section 22 or 23 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.
- Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36)* 10
- 55 In Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (public authorities) omit “The Legal Services Commission.”
- International Criminal Court Act 2001 (c. 17)*
- 56 In section 6(2)(c) of the International Criminal Court Act 2001 (supplementary provisions as to proceedings before competent court) for “Access to Justice Act 1999 (c.22) (advice, assistance and representation)” substitute “Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 15
- Anti-terrorism, Crime and Security Act 2001 (c. 24)*
- 57 In Schedule 4 to the Anti-terrorism, Crime and Security Act 2001 (extension of disclosure powers) – 20
- (a) omit paragraph 47, and
- (b) after paragraph 53D insert –
- “53E Sections 33(2) and 34 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.”
- Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 (c. 29)* 25
- 58 The Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 is amended as follows.
- 59 In section 245C(6)(b) (exclusion from property freezing order or prohibition on dealing with property to which order applies) for “funded by the Legal Services Commission or” substitute “made available under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 or funded by”. 30
- 60 In section 252(4A)(b) (exclusion from restriction on dealing with property) for “funded by the Legal Services Commission or” substitute “made available under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 or funded by”. 35
- Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)*
- 61 In section 119(7)(a) of the Communications Act 2003 (charges to recover costs of assistance in proceedings) –
- (a) for “section 10(7) of the Access to Justice Act 1999 (c.22)” substitute “section 24 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”, and 40

(b) for “Legal Services Commission” substitute “Lord Chancellor”.

*Extradition Act 2003 (c. 41)*

62 The Extradition Act 2003 is amended as follows.

63 In section 45(7) (consent to extradition) for paragraph (a) substitute—  
 “(a) in England and Wales, representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings provided under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011;” 5

64 In section 127(8) (consent to extradition: general) for paragraph (a) substitute—  
 “(a) in England and Wales, representation for the purposes of criminal proceedings provided under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011;” 10

*Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)* 15

65 In section 71(8) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (matters to which reporting restrictions do not apply) for paragraph (g) substitute—  
 “(g) whether, for the purposes of the proceedings, representation was provided to the defendant or any of the defendants under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.” 20

*Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 (c. 28)*

66 In Schedule 9 to the Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 (authorities within remit of Commissioner for Victims and Witnesses) omit paragraph 21 (Legal Services Commission). 25

*Equality Act 2006 (c. 3)*

67 In section 29(3) of the Equality Act 2006 (costs of Equality and Human Rights Commission in providing legal assistance) for “section 11(4)(f) of the Access to Justice Act 1999 (c. 22) (recovery of costs in funded cases)” substitute “section 24 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 (statutory charge in connection with civil legal aid)” 30

*Legal Services Act 2007 (c. 29)*

68 In section 194(6) of the Legal Services Act 2007 (payments in respect of pro bono representation) for paragraph (b) substitute—  
 “(b) provided under arrangements made for the purposes of Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.” 35

*Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (c. 4)*

69 In paragraph 19(2) of Schedule 1 to the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (preconditions to imposing local authority residence requirement or fostering requirement) for paragraph (a) (but not the “or” following it) 40

substitute –

“(a) that representation was made available to the offender for the purposes of the proceedings under Part 1 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 but was withdrawn because of the offender’s conduct,”.

5

*Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)*

70 In Part 1 of Schedule 19 to the Equality Act 2010 (public authorities) omit “The Legal Services Commission.”

*Terrorist Asset-Freezing etc Act 2010 (c. 38)*

71 In section 23(1)(d) (general power to disclose information) omit “the Legal Services Commission,”.

10

PART 2

REPEALS CONSEQUENTIAL ON PART 1 OF THIS SCHEDULE

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Legal Aid Act 1988 (c. 34)	In Schedule 5, paragraph 13.	15
Access to Justice Act 1999 (c. 22)	In Schedule 4 –	
	(a) paragraph 1;	
	(b) paragraph 8;	
	(c) paragraphs 10 to 12;	
	(d) paragraphs 15 to 19;	20
	(e) paragraphs 29 and 30(2) and (3)(a);	
	(f) paragraph 33;	
	(g) paragraph 35;	
	(h) paragraphs 38 to 40;	
	(i) paragraph 45;	25
	(j) paragraph 47;	
	(k) paragraph 49;	
	(l) paragraphs 51(3) and 52;	
	(m) paragraph 55.	
Terrorism Act 2000 (c. 11)	In Schedule 15, paragraph 19.	30
Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19)	In Schedule 8, paragraph 15.	
Criminal Defence Service (Advice and Assistance) Act 2001 (c. 4)	The whole Act.	35
Anti-terrorism, Crime and Security Act 2001 (c. 24)	Section 2(1) to (3).	
Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 (c. 29)	In Schedule 11, paragraph 36.	40
Adoption and Children Act 2002 (c. 38)	In Schedule 3, paragraph 102.	

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41)	Section 116.	
Extradition Act 2003 (c. 41)	Section 182.	
Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)	In Schedule 26, paragraph 51.	5
Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33)	In Schedule 27, paragraph 156.	
Constitutional Reform Act 2005 (c. 4)	In Schedule 9, paragraph 68(3).	
Mental Capacity Act 2005 (c. 9)	In Schedule 6, paragraph 44.	10
Criminal Defence Service Act 2006 (c.9)	Sections 1 to 3. Section 4(1).	
Serious Crime Act 2007 (c. 27)	In Schedule 8, paragraph 159.	
Legal Services Act 2007 (c. 29)	In Schedule 16, paragraphs 51(4) and 108(c). In Schedule 21, paragraph 128.	15
Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (c. 4)	Sections 56 to 58.	
Human Fertilisation and Embryology Act 2008 (c. 22)	Schedule 6, paragraph 38.	
Coroners and Justice Act 2009 (c. 25)	Section 51. Sections 149 to 153. Schedule 18.	20
Policing and Crime Act 2009 (c. 26)	In Schedule 7, paragraphs 65 and 98.	

SCHEDULE 6

Section 39

25

NORTHERN IRELAND: INFORMATION ABOUT FINANCIAL RESOURCES

*Obtaining information*

- 1 (1) The relevant authority may make an information request to –
  - (a) the Secretary of State,
  - (b) a relevant Northern Ireland Department, or
  - (c) the Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs (“the Commissioners”).

30
  
- (2) An information request may be made under this paragraph only for the purposes of facilitating a determination about an individual’s financial resources for the purposes of –
  - (a) the Legal Aid, Advice and Assistance (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/228 (N.I. 8)), or
  - (b) the Access to Justice (Northern Ireland) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/435 (N.I. 10)).

35

- (3) An information request made to the Secretary of State or a relevant Northern Ireland Department under this paragraph may request the disclosure of some or all of the following information –
- (a) a relevant individual’s full name and any previous names;
  - (b) a relevant individual’s address and any previous addresses; 5
  - (c) a relevant individual’s date of birth;
  - (d) a relevant individual’s national insurance number;
  - (e) a relevant individual’s benefit status at a time specified in the request;
  - (f) information of a prescribed description. 10
- (4) An information request made to the Commissioners under this paragraph may request the disclosure of some or all of the following information –
- (a) whether or not a relevant individual is employed or was employed at a time specified in the request;
  - (b) the name and address of the employer; 15
  - (c) whether or not a relevant individual is carrying on a business, trade or profession or was doing so at a time specified in the request;
  - (d) the name under which it is or was carried on;
  - (e) the address of any premises used for the purposes of carrying it on;
  - (f) a relevant individual’s national insurance number; 20
  - (g) a relevant individual’s benefit status at a time specified in the request;
  - (h) information of a prescribed description.
- (5) The information that may be prescribed under sub-paragraphs (3)(f) and (4)(h) includes, in particular, information relating to – 25
- (a) prescribed income of a relevant individual for a prescribed period, and
  - (b) prescribed capital of a relevant individual.
- (6) Information may not be prescribed under sub-paragraph (4)(h) without the Commissioners’ consent. 30
- (7) The Secretary of State, the relevant Northern Ireland Departments and the Commissioners may disclose to the relevant authority information specified in an information request made under this paragraph.
- (8) In this paragraph –
- “benefit status”, in relation to an individual, means whether or not the individual is in receipt of a prescribed benefit or benefits and, if so – 35
    - (a) which benefit or benefits the individual is receiving,
    - (b) whether the individual is entitled to the benefit or benefits alone or jointly,
    - (c) in prescribed cases, the amount the individual is receiving by way of the benefit (or each of the benefits) (“the benefit amount”), and 40
    - (d) in prescribed cases, where the benefit consists of a number of elements, what those elements are and the amount included in respect of each element in calculating the benefit amount; 45
  - “financial resources”, in relation to an individual, includes an individual’s means, disposable income and disposable capital;
  - “the relevant authority” means –

- (a) a prescribed person, or
  - (b) in relation to circumstances for which no person is prescribed, the chief executive of the Northern Ireland Legal Services Commission;
- “a relevant individual”, in relation to an information request under this paragraph for the purposes of a determination about an individual’s financial resources, means –
- (a) that individual, and
  - (b) any other individual whose financial resources are or may be relevant for the purposes of the determination;
- “relevant Northern Ireland Department” means the Department for Social Development in Northern Ireland or the Department of Finance and Personnel in Northern Ireland.

*Restrictions on disclosing information*

- 2 (1) A person to whom information is disclosed under paragraph 1 of this Schedule or this sub-paragraph may disclose the information to any person to whom its disclosure is necessary or expedient in connection with facilitating a determination described in paragraph 1(2). 15
- (2) A person to whom such information is disclosed must not –
- (a) disclose the information other than in accordance with sub-paragraph (1), or 20
  - (b) use the information other than for the purpose of facilitating a determination described in paragraph 1(2).
- (3) Sub-paragraph (2) does not prevent –
- (a) the disclosure of information in accordance with an enactment or an order of a court, 25
  - (b) the disclosure of information for the purposes of the investigation or prosecution of an offence (or suspected offence) under the law of England and Wales or Northern Ireland or any other jurisdiction, except as otherwise prescribed, 30
  - (c) the disclosure of information for the purposes of instituting, or otherwise for the purposes of, proceedings before a court, or
  - (d) the disclosure of information which has previously been lawfully disclosed to the public.
- (4) A person who discloses or uses information in contravention of this paragraph is guilty of an offence and liable – 35
- (a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 2 years or a fine (or both);
  - (b) on summary conviction –
    - (i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 12 months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both), and 40
    - (ii) in Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 6 months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both). 45
- (5) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under this paragraph to prove that the person reasonably believed that the disclosure or use was lawful.

- (6) In this paragraph “enactment” includes –
- (a) an enactment contained subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978), and
  - (b) an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under, an Act or Measure of the National Assembly for Wales or Northern Ireland legislation. 5
- (7) In relation to an offence under this paragraph committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003, the reference in sub-paragraph (4)(b)(i) to 12 months has effect as if it were a reference to 6 months. 10

*Power to make consequential and supplementary provision etc*

- 3 (1) The Department of Justice in Northern Ireland may by regulations make consequential, supplementary, incidental or transitional provision in relation to this Schedule extending to Northern Ireland.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular – 15
- (a) amend, repeal, revoke or otherwise modify Northern Ireland legislation passed before this Schedule comes into force or an instrument made under such legislation, and
  - (b) include transitory or saving provision.

*Regulations* 20

- 4 (1) In this Schedule “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made by the Department of Justice in Northern Ireland.
- (2) The powers under this Schedule to make regulations are exercisable by statutory rule for the purposes of the Statutory Rules (Northern Ireland) Order 1979 (S.I. 1979/1573 (N.I. 12)). 25
- (3) Regulations under this Schedule are subject to negative resolution within the meaning of section 41(6) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954, subject to sub-paragraph (4).
- (4) The following regulations may not be made unless a draft of the regulations has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, the Northern Ireland Assembly – 30
- (a) the first regulations under paragraph 1, and
  - (b) regulations under paragraph 3 that amend or repeal Northern Ireland legislation (whether alone or with other provision).
- (5) Section 41(3) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954 applies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (4) in relation to the laying of a draft as it applies in relation to the laying of a statutory document under an enactment (as defined in that Act). 35
- (6) Subsections (1) to (3) of section 40 apply in relation to regulations made under paragraph 1 or 2 of this Schedule as they apply in relation to regulations made by the Lord Chancellor under this Part. 40

SCHEDULE 7

Section 59

COSTS IN CRIMINAL CASES

PART 1

PROSECUTION OF OFFENCES ACT 1985

*Introduction* 5

1 The Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 is amended as follows.

*Defence costs*

2 (1) Section 16 (defence costs) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (6) insert –

“(6A) Where the court considers that there are circumstances that make it inappropriate for the accused to recover the full amount mentioned in subsection (6), a defendant’s costs order must be for the payment out of central funds of such lesser amount as the court considers just and reasonable. 10

(6B) Subsections (6) and (6A) have effect subject to – 15  
 (a) section 16A, and  
 (b) regulations under section 20(1A)(d).

(6C) When making a defendant’s costs order, the court must fix the amount to be paid out of central funds in the order if it considers it appropriate to do so and – 20  
 (a) the accused agrees the amount, or  
 (b) subsection (6A) applies.

(6D) Where the court does not fix the amount to be paid out of central funds in the order – 25  
 (a) it must describe in the order any reduction required under subsection (6A), and  
 (b) the amount must be fixed by means of a determination made by or on behalf of the court in accordance with procedures specified in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor.”

(3) Omit subsections (7) and (9). 30

*Legal costs*

3 After section 16 insert –

**“16A Legal costs**

(1) A defendant’s costs order may not require the payment out of central funds of an amount that includes an amount in respect of the accused’s legal costs, subject to the following provisions of this section. 35

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply where condition A, B or C is met.



- (3) Condition A is that the accused is an individual and the order is made under –
  - (a) section 16(1),
  - (b) section 16(3), or
  - (c) section 16(4)(a)(ii) or (iii) or (d). 5
- (4) Condition B is that the accused is an individual and the legal costs were incurred in proceedings in a court below which were –
  - (a) proceedings in a magistrates’ court, or
  - (b) proceedings on an appeal to the Crown Court under section 108 of the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (right of appeal against conviction or sentence). 10
- (5) Condition C is that the legal costs were incurred in proceedings in the Supreme Court.
- (6) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations make provision about exceptions from the prohibition in subsection (1), including –
  - (a) provision amending this section by adding, modifying or removing an exception, and
  - (b) provision for an exception to arise where a determination has been made by a person specified in the regulations. 15
- (7) Regulations under subsection (6) may not remove or limit the exception provided by condition C. 20
- (8) Where a court makes a defendant’s costs order requiring the payment out of central funds of an amount that includes an amount in respect of legal costs, the order must include a statement to that effect. 25
- (9) Where, in a defendant’s costs order, a court fixes an amount to be paid out of central funds that includes an amount in respect of legal costs incurred in proceedings in a court other than the Supreme Court, the latter amount must not exceed an amount specified by regulations made by the Lord Chancellor. 30
- (10) In this section –
  - “legal costs” means fees, charges, disbursements and other amounts payable in respect of advocacy services or litigation services including, in particular, expert witness costs;
  - “advocacy services” means any services which it would be reasonable to expect a person who is exercising, or contemplating exercising, a right of audience in relation to any proceedings, or contemplated proceedings, to provide; 35
  - “expert witness costs” means amounts payable in respect of the services of an expert witness, including amounts payable in connection with attendance by the witness at court or elsewhere; 40
  - “litigation services” means any services which it would be reasonable to expect a person who is exercising, or contemplating exercising, a right to conduct litigation in relation to proceedings, or contemplated proceedings, to provide.” 45

*Prosecution costs*

- 4 (1) Section 17 (prosecution costs) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for “subsection (2)” substitute “subsections (2) and (2A)”.
- (3) After subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) Where the court considers that there are circumstances that make it inappropriate for the prosecution to recover the full amount mentioned in subsection (1), an order under this section must be for the payment out of central funds of such lesser amount as the court considers just and reasonable. 5
- (2B) When making an order under this section, the court must fix the amount to be paid out of central funds in the order if it considers it appropriate to do so and – 10
- (a) the prosecutor agrees the amount, or
- (b) subsection (2A) applies.
- (2C) Where the court does not fix the amount to be paid out of central funds in the order – 15
- (a) it must describe in the order any reduction required under subsection (2A), and
- (b) the amount must be fixed by means of a determination made by or on behalf of the court in accordance with procedures specified in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor.” 20
- (4) Omit subsections (3) and (4).

*Costs of witnesses and appellants not in custody*

- 5 (1) Section 19 (provision for orders as to costs in other circumstances) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) After subsection (3) insert –
- “(3ZA) In relation to a sum that may be required by a court other than the Supreme Court to be paid out of central funds under regulations under subsection (3) –
- (a) the requirement under that subsection for the sum to be such sum as the court considers reasonably necessary to cover or compensate for expenses, fees, costs, trouble or losses is subject to regulations made under section 20(1A)(d), and 30
- (b) regulations under subsection (3) may make provision accordingly.” 35
- (3) After subsection (3C) insert –
- “(3D) Regulations under subsection (3) may make provision generally or only in relation to particular descriptions of persons, expenses, fees, costs, trouble or losses.”
- (4) After subsection (4) insert – 40
- “(4A) Subsection (4) has effect subject to regulations under section 20(1A)(d).

- (4B) An order under subsection (4) may not require the payment out of central funds of a sum that includes a sum in respect of legal costs (as defined in section 16A), except where regulations made by the Lord Chancellor provide otherwise.
- (4C) Regulations under subsection (4B) may, in particular, include – 5
- (a) provision for an exception to arise where a determination has been made by a person specified in the regulations,
  - (b) provision requiring the court, when it orders the payment of a sum that includes a sum in respect of legal costs, to include a statement to that effect in the order, and 10
  - (c) provision that the court may not order the payment of a sum in respect of legal costs exceeding an amount specified in the regulations.”

*Regulations*

- 6 (1) Section 20 (regulations) is amended as follows. 15
- (2) In subsection (1) omit the words from “and the regulations” to the end.
- (3) After that subsection insert –
- “(1A) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations –
- (a) make provision as to the amounts that may be ordered to be paid out of central funds in pursuance of a costs order, whether by specifying rates or scales or by making other provision as to the calculation of the amounts, 20
  - (b) make provision as to the circumstances in which and conditions under which such amounts may be paid or ordered to be paid, 25
  - (c) make provision requiring amounts required to be paid out of central funds by a costs order to be calculated having regard to regulations under paragraphs (a) and (b),
  - (d) make provision requiring amounts required to be paid to a person out of central funds by a relevant costs order to be calculated in accordance with such regulations (whether or not that results in the fixing of an amount that the court considers reasonably sufficient or necessary to compensate the person), and 30
  - (e) make provision as to the review of determinations of amounts required to be paid out of central funds by costs orders. 35
- (1B) In subsection (1A)(d) “relevant costs order” means a costs order other than –
- (a) an order made by any court under section 17, and 40
  - (b) so much of a costs order made by the Supreme Court as relates to expenses, fees, costs, trouble or losses incurred in proceedings in that court.
- (1C) Regulations under subsection (1A) may, in particular –
- (a) make different provision in relation to amounts to be paid in respect of different expenses, fees, costs, trouble and losses, 45

- (b) make different provision in relation to different costs orders and different areas, and
- (c) make different provision in relation to the fixing of an amount in a costs order and the fixing of an amount by means of a determination.” 5
- (4) In subsection (3) –
  - (a) for “subsection (1)” substitute “subsection (1A)”,
  - (b) for “rates or scales of allowances” substitute “provision as to the calculation of amounts”, and
  - (c) after “order” insert “(whether in the form of rates or scales or other provision)”. 10

### *Interpretation*

- 7 (1) Section 21 (interpretation) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4) after “16” insert “, 16A”.
- (3) In subsection (4A)(a) after “16” insert “, 16A”. 15

### *Supplementary*

- 8 (1) Section 29 (regulations) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute –
  - “(1) A power to make regulations under this Act is exercisable by statutory instrument. 20
  - (1A) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this Act is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament, subject to subsection (1B).
  - (1B) A statutory instrument containing (whether alone or with other provision) regulations under section 16A(6) or 19(4B) may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.” 25
- (3) In subsection (2) for “Any such regulations” substitute “Regulations under this Act”.

## PART 2 30

### ATTORNEY GENERAL’S REFERENCES

#### *Reference of point of law following acquittal on indictment*

- 9 (1) Section 36 of the Criminal Justice Act 1972 (reference of point of law following acquittal on indictment) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (5) omit “to his costs, that is to say”. 35
- (3) Omit subsection (5A).
- (4) After that subsection insert –
  - “(5A) Subsection (5) has effect subject to –

- (a) subsection (5B), and
  - (b) regulations under section 20(1A)(d) of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (as applied by this section).
- (5B) A person is not entitled under subsection (5) to the payment of sums in respect of legal costs (as defined in section 16A of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985) incurred in proceedings in the Court of Appeal. 5
- (5C) Subsections (1A) to (1C) and (3) of section 20 of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (regulations as to amounts ordered to be paid out of central funds) apply in relation to amounts payable out of central funds under subsection (5) as they apply in relation to amounts payable out of central funds in pursuance of costs orders made under section 16 of that Act.” 10
- 10 In consequence of the amendments made by paragraph 9, omit paragraph 8 of Schedule 1 to the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985.
- Reference of sentence of Crown Court appearing to be unduly lenient* 15
- 11 (1) Schedule 3 to the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (reference of sentence of Crown Court appearing to be unduly lenient) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 11 (recovery of costs of representation) –
  - (a) number the existing provision sub-paragraph (1),
  - (b) in that sub-paragraph, omit “to his costs, that is to say”, and 20
  - (c) after that sub-paragraph insert –
    - “(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect subject to –
      - (a) sub-paragraph (3), and
      - (b) regulations under section 20(1A)(d) of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (as applied by this paragraph). 25
  - (3) A person is not entitled under sub-paragraph (1) to the payment of sums in respect of legal costs (as defined in section 16A of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985) incurred in proceedings in the Court of Appeal. 30
  - (4) Subsections (1A) to (1C) and (3) of section 20 of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (regulations as to amounts ordered to be paid out of central funds) apply in relation to funds payable out of central funds under sub-paragraph (1) as they apply in relation to amounts payable out of central funds in pursuance of costs orders made under section 16 of that Act.” 35
- (3) In paragraph 12 (application to Northern Ireland) –
  - (a) for “11”, in each place, substitute “11(1)”, and
  - (b) after sub-paragraph (d) insert – 40
    - “(e) paragraph 11 has effect as if sub-paragraphs (2) to (4) were omitted.”

PART 3

EXTRADITION ACT 2003

*Introduction*

12 The Extradition Act 2003 is amended as follows.

*Extradition to Category 1 Territories* 5

13 (1) Section 61 (costs where discharge ordered) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (5) insert –

“(5A) In England and Wales, an order under subsection (5) is to be made, and the appropriate amount is to be determined, in accordance with sections 62A and 62B. 10

(5B) In Scotland and Northern Ireland, an order under subsection (5) is to be made, and the appropriate amount is to be determined, in accordance with subsections (6) to (9).”

14 In section 62 (supplementary provision about costs where discharge ordered) omit subsections (1) and (2). 15

15 After section 62 insert –

**“62A Appropriate amount: England and Wales**

(1) For the purposes of an order under section 61(5), the appropriate amount is such amount as the judge or court making the order considers reasonably sufficient to compensate the person in whose favour the order is made for any expenses properly incurred by the person in the proceedings under this Part. 20

(2) But if the judge or court considers that there are circumstances that make it inappropriate for the person to recover the full amount mentioned in subsection (1), the order under section 61(5) must be for the payment out of money provided by Parliament of such lesser amount as the judge or court considers just and reasonable. 25

(3) Subsections (1) and (2) have effect subject to –  
 (a) section 62B, and  
 (b) regulations under section 20(1A)(d) of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (as applied by this section). 30

(4) When making an order under section 61(5), the judge or court must fix the amount to be paid out of money provided by Parliament in the order if the judge or court considers it appropriate to do so and –  
 (a) the person in whose favour the order is made agrees the amount, or  
 (b) subsection (2) applies. 35

(5) Where the judge or court does not fix the amount to be paid out of money provided by Parliament in the order –  
 (a) the judge or court must describe in the order any reduction required under subsection (2), and 40

(b) the amount must be fixed by means of a determination made by or on behalf of the judge or court in accordance with procedures specified in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor.

- (6) Subsections (1A) to (1C) and (3) of section 20 of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (regulations as to amounts ordered to be paid out of central funds) apply in relation to amounts payable out of money provided by Parliament in pursuance of an order under section 61 as they apply in relation to amounts payable out of central funds in pursuance of costs orders made under section 16 of that Act. 5  
10
- (7) This section extends to England and Wales only.

#### **62B Legal costs: England and Wales**

- (1) An order under section 61(5) may not require the payment out of money provided by Parliament of an amount that includes an amount in respect of legal costs incurred by the person in whose favour the order is made, subject to the following provisions of this section. 15
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to legal costs incurred in—  
(a) proceedings in a magistrates’ court, or  
(b) proceedings in the Supreme Court. 20
- (3) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations make provision about exceptions from the prohibition in subsection (1), including—  
(a) provision amending this section by adding, modifying or removing an exception, and  
(b) provision for an exception to arise where a determination has been made by a person specified in the regulations. 25
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) may not remove or limit the exception provided by subsection (2)(b).
- (5) Where a judge or court makes an order under section 61(5) requiring the payment out of money provided by Parliament of an amount that includes an amount in respect of legal costs, the order must include a statement to that effect. 30
- (6) Where, in an order under section 61(5), a judge or court fixes an amount to be paid out of money provided by Parliament that includes an amount in respect of legal costs incurred in proceedings in a court other than the Supreme Court, the latter amount must not exceed an amount specified by regulations made by the Lord Chancellor. 35
- (7) In this section—  
“legal costs” means fees, charges, disbursements and other amounts payable in respect of advocacy services or litigation services including, in particular, expert witness costs; 40  
“advocacy services” means any services which it would be reasonable to expect a person who is exercising, or contemplating exercising, a right of audience in relation to any proceedings, or contemplated proceedings, to provide; 45

	“expert witness costs” means amounts payable in respect of the services of an expert witness, including amounts payable in connection with attendance by the witness at court or elsewhere;	
	“litigation services” means any services which it would be reasonable to expect a person who is exercising, or contemplating exercising, a right to conduct litigation in relation to proceedings, or contemplated proceedings, to provide.	5
	(8) This section extends to England and Wales only.”	10
<i>Extradition to Category 2 Territories</i>		
16	(1) Section 134 (costs where discharge ordered) is amended as follows.	
	(2) After subsection (5) insert –	
	“(5A) In England and Wales, an order under subsection (5) is to be made, and the appropriate amount is to be determined, in accordance with sections 135A and 135B.	15
	(5B) In Scotland and Northern Ireland, an order under subsection (5) is to be made, and the appropriate amount is to be determined, in accordance with subsections (6) to (9).”	
17	In section 135 (supplementary provision about costs where discharge ordered) omit subsections (1) and (2).	20
18	After section 135 insert –	
	<b>“135A Appropriate amount: England and Wales</b>	
	(1) For the purposes of an order under section 134(5), the appropriate amount is such amount as the judge or court making the order considers reasonably sufficient to compensate the person in whose favour the order is made for any expenses properly incurred by the person in the proceedings under this Part.	25
	(2) But if the judge or court considers that there are circumstances that make it inappropriate for the person to recover the full amount mentioned in subsection (1), the order under section 134(5) must be for the payment out of money provided by Parliament of such lesser amount as the judge or court considers just and reasonable.	30
	(3) Subsections (1) and (2) have effect subject to –	
	(a) section 135B, and	35
	(b) regulations under section 20(1A)(d) of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (as applied by this section).	
	(4) When making an order under section 134(5), the judge or court must fix the amount to be paid out of money provided by Parliament in the order if the judge or court considers it appropriate to do so and –	40
	(a) the person in whose favour the order is made agrees the amount, or	
	(b) subsection (2) applies.	



- 
- (5) Where the judge or court does not fix the amount to be paid out of money provided by Parliament in the order –
- (a) the judge or court must describe in the order any reduction required under subsection (2), and
  - (b) the amount must be fixed by means of a determination made by or on behalf of the court in accordance with procedures specified in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor. 5
- (6) Subsections (1A) to (1C) and (3) of section 20 of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (regulations as to amounts ordered to be paid out of central funds) apply in relation to amounts payable out of money provided by Parliament in pursuance of an order under section 134 as they apply in relation to amounts payable out of central funds in pursuance of costs orders made under section 16 of that Act. 10
- (7) This section extends to England and Wales only. 15
- 135B Legal costs: England and Wales** 15
- (1) An order under section 134(5) may not require the payment out of money provided by Parliament of an amount that includes an amount in respect of legal costs incurred by the person in whose favour the order is made, subject to the following provisions of this section. 20
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to legal costs incurred in –
- (a) proceedings in a magistrates’ court, or
  - (b) proceedings in the Supreme Court.
- (3) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations make provision about exceptions from the prohibition in subsection (1), including – 25
- (a) provision amending this section by adding, modifying or removing an exception, and
  - (b) provision for an exception to arise where a determination has been made by a person specified in the regulations.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) may not remove or limit the exception provided by subsection (2)(b). 30
- (5) Where a judge or court makes an order under section 134(5) requiring the payment out of money provided by Parliament of an amount that includes an amount in respect of legal costs, the order must include a statement to that effect. 35
- (6) Where, in an order under section 134(5), a judge or court fixes an amount to be paid out of money provided by Parliament that includes an amount in respect of legal costs incurred in proceedings in a court other than the Supreme Court, the latter amount must not exceed an amount specified by regulations made by the Lord Chancellor. 40
- (7) In this section “legal costs” means –
- “legal costs” means fees, charges, disbursements and other amounts payable in respect of advocacy services or litigation services including, in particular, expert witness costs; 45
  - “advocacy services” means any services which it would be reasonable to expect a person who is exercising, or

contemplating exercising, a right of audience in relation to any proceedings, or contemplated proceedings, to provide;

“expert witness costs” means amounts payable in respect of the services of an expert witness, including amounts payable in connection with attendance by the witness at court or elsewhere; 5

“litigation services” means any services which it would be reasonable to expect a person who is exercising, or contemplating exercising, a right to conduct litigation in relation to proceedings, or contemplated proceedings, to provide. 10

(8) This section extends to England and Wales only.”

### *Regulations*

19 In section 223(6) (orders and regulations subject to affirmative procedure), at the appropriate places insert – 15

“section 62B(3)”;

“section 135B(3)”.

### PART 4

#### SAVINGS

20 The amendments made by paragraphs 2 to 5 do not have effect in relation to costs orders made by a court in proceedings which commenced before the relevant day. 20

21 The amendments made by paragraphs 9 to 11 do not have effect in relation to a person’s entitlement to costs in connection with a reference made before the relevant day. 25

22 The amendments made by paragraphs 12 to 19 do not have effect in relation to orders made by a judge or court in proceedings which commenced before the relevant day.

23 In paragraphs 20 to 22 “the relevant day”, in relation to an amendment, means the day on which the amendment comes into force. 30

24 For the purposes of paragraphs 20 and 22 –

- (a) proceedings commence in a magistrates’ court when a warrant, requisition or summons relating to the proceedings is issued;
- (b) proceedings commence on an appeal to the Crown Court when a notice of appeal is served; 35
- (c) other proceedings commence in the Crown Court when they are committed, transferred or sent to that court;
- (d) proceedings commence in the High Court when an application for leave to appeal by way of case stated is made or (in the absence of such an application) when notice of appeal is given; 40
- (e) proceedings commence in the Court of Appeal when an application for leave to appeal is made or (in the absence of such an application) when notice of appeal is given;
- (f) proceedings commence in the Supreme Court when an application for leave to appeal is made. 45

SCHEDULE 8

Section 59

COSTS IN CRIMINAL CASES: SERVICE COURTS

PART 1

APPEALS FROM COURT MARTIAL

<i>Introduction</i>	5
1 Part 2 of the Court Martial Appeals Act 1968 (appeals from Court Martial) is amended as follows.	
<i>Costs of successful appellant</i>	
2 (1) Section 31 (costs of successful appellant) is amended as follows.	
(2) In subsection (1) omit “other than an appeal against sentence”.	10
(3) In subsection (2) at the end insert “, subject to subsection (3), section 31A and regulations under section 33B(1)(d).”	
(4) After subsection (2) insert –	
“(3) Where the Appeal Court consider that there are circumstances that make it inappropriate for the appellant to recover the whole of the sums mentioned in subsection (2), a direction under this section must be for the payment of such lesser sums as they consider just and reasonable.	15
(4) The Appeal Court must fix the sums to be paid by the Secretary of State in the direction if they consider it appropriate to do so and –	20
(a) the appellant agrees the sums, or	
(b) subsection (3) applies.	
(5) Where the Appeal Court do not fix the sums to be paid by the Secretary of State in the direction –	
(a) they must describe in the direction any reduction required under subsection (3), and	25
(b) the sums must be fixed by means of a determination made by or on behalf of the Appeal Court in accordance with procedures specified in regulations made by the Lord Chancellor.”	30
<i>Legal costs</i>	
3 After section 31 insert –	
<b>“31A Legal costs</b>	
(1) The costs which the Appeal Court may direct the Secretary of State to pay under section 31 do not include legal costs, except where regulations made by the Lord Chancellor provide otherwise.	35
(2) Regulations under this section may, in particular, include –	
(a) provision for an exception to arise where a determination has been made by a person specified in the regulations,	

- (b) provision requiring the Appeal Court, when they direct the payment of a sum that includes a sum in respect of legal costs, to include a statement to that effect in the direction, and
- (c) provision that the Appeal Court may not direct the payment of a sum in respect of legal costs exceeding an amount specified in the regulations. 5
- (3) In this section –
- “legal costs” means fees, charges, disbursements and other amounts payable in respect of advocacy services or litigation services including, in particular, expert witness costs; 10
- “advocacy services” means any services which it would be reasonable to expect a person who is exercising, or contemplating exercising, a right of audience in relation to any proceedings, or contemplated proceedings, to provide;
- “expert witness costs” means amounts payable in respect of the services of an expert witness, including amounts payable in connection with attendance by the witness at court or elsewhere; 15
- “litigation services” means any services which it would be reasonable to expect a person who is exercising, or contemplating exercising, a right to conduct litigation in relation to proceedings, or contemplated proceedings, to provide.” 20

*Witnesses’ expenses*

- 4 (1) Section 33 (witnesses’ expenses) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In subsection (1) at the end insert “, subject to subsection (3) and regulations under section 33B(1)(d)”.
- (3) At the end insert –
- “(3) Sums ordered to be paid out of money provided by Parliament under subsection (1) may not include sums in respect of expert witness costs (as defined in section 31A), unless regulations made by the Lord Chancellor provide otherwise.” 30

*Expenses of appellant not in custody*

- 5 (1) Section 33A (appellant’s expenses) is amended as follows. 35
- (2) Number the existing provision subsection (1).
- (3) After that subsection insert –
- “(2) The expenses which the Appeal Court may direct the Secretary of State to pay under this section do not include legal costs (as defined in section 31A), except where regulations made by the Lord Chancellor provide otherwise. 40
- (3) Regulations under this section may, in particular, include –
- (a) provision for an exception to arise where a determination has been made by a person specified in the regulations,

- (b) provision requiring the Appeal Court, when they direct the payment of a sum that includes a sum in respect of legal costs, to include a statement to that effect in the direction, and
- (c) provision that the Appeal Court may not direct the payment of a sum in respect of legal costs exceeding an amount specified in the regulations.” 5

*Further provision about costs*

6 After section 33A insert –

**“33B Further provision about costs**

- (1) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations – 10
  - (a) make provision as to the sums that may be directed or ordered to be paid under section 31, 33 or 33A, whether by specifying rates or scales or by making other provision as to the calculation of the sums,
  - (b) make provision as to the circumstances in which and conditions under which such sums may be paid or directed or ordered to be paid, 15
  - (c) make provision requiring such sums to be fixed having regard to regulations under paragraphs (a) and (b),
  - (d) make provision requiring such sums to be calculated in accordance with such regulations (whether or not that results in the fixing of an amount that the court considers reasonably sufficient to compensate the person concerned), and 20
  - (e) make provision as to the review of determinations of sums directed to be paid under section 31. 25
- (2) Regulations under this section may provide that provision as to the calculation of sums (whether in the form of rates or scales or other provision) may be determined by the Lord Chancellor with the consent of the Treasury.”

*Regulations* 30

7 After section 33B insert –

**“33C Regulations**

- (1) Regulations under sections 31, 31A, 33, 33A and 33B may, in particular –
  - (a) make different provision in relation to different cases and different classes of case, including different provision in relation to different expenses, trouble and loss, different directions and orders and different areas, and 35
  - (b) make different provision in relation to the fixing of a sum in a direction or order and the fixing of a sum by means of a determination. 40
- (2) A power to make regulations under those sections is exercisable by statutory instrument.

- (3) A statutory instrument containing regulations under those sections is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament, subject to subsection (4).
- (4) A statutory instrument containing (whether alone or with other provision) regulations under section 31A, 33 or 33A may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.” 5

*Consequential repeal*

- 8 In consequence of the amendment made by paragraph 2(2), omit paragraph 1(6) of Schedule 2 to the Armed Forces Act 1971. 10

PART 2

APPEALS FROM COURT MARTIAL APPEAL COURT

*Introduction*

- 9 Part 3 of the Court Martial Appeals Act 1968 (appeals from Court Martial Appeal Court) is amended as follows. 15

*Application to Appeal Court*

- 10 Before section 47 insert –

**“46A Costs: application to Appeal Court by Director of Service Prosecutions**

- (1) Where the Appeal Court dismiss an application for leave to appeal to the Supreme Court made by the Director of Service Prosecutions, the Appeal Court may direct the payment by the Secretary of State of such sums as appear to them to be reasonably sufficient to compensate the accused for any expenses properly incurred by the accused in resisting the application, subject to – 20
- (a) subsection (2), and 25
- (b) regulations under section 47A(1)(d).
- (2) The sums which the Appeal Court may direct the Secretary of State to pay do not include legal costs (as defined in section 31A), except where regulations made by the Lord Chancellor provide otherwise.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may, in particular, include – 30
- (a) provision for an exception to arise where a determination has been made by a person specified in the regulations,
- (b) provision requiring the Appeal Court, when they direct the payment of a sum that includes a sum in respect of legal costs, to include a statement to that effect in the direction, and 35
- (c) provision that the Appeal Court may not direct the payment of a sum in respect of legal costs exceeding an amount specified in the regulations.

**46B Costs: application to Appeal Court by accused**

- Where the Appeal Court dismiss an application for leave to appeal to the Supreme Court made by the accused – 40

- (a) the Appeal Court may make the like order as may be made by the Court under section 32(1) of this Act where they dismiss an application for leave to appeal to the Court,
- (b) an order made under this section may be enforced in the manner described in section 32(2) of this Act, and 5
- (c) section 32(3) of this Act applies in relation to any sum recovered by virtue of section 32(2)(a) (as applied by this section).”

*Application to Supreme Court*

- 11 (1) Section 47 (costs) is amended as follows. 10
- (2) In subsections (1) and (2) omit “the Appeal Court or” (in each place).
- (3) After subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) Section 32(3) of this Act applies in relation to any sum recovered by virtue of section 32(2)(a) (as applied by subsection (2)).”
- (4) In subsection (3), at the end insert “subject to – 15
- (a) subsection (3A), and
  - (b) regulations under section 47A(1)(d).”
- (5) After subsection (3) insert –
- “(3A) The costs which the Supreme Court may direct the Secretary of State to pay do not include legal costs (as defined in section 31A) incurred 20 in proceedings in a court below, except where regulations made by the Lord Chancellor provide otherwise.
- (3B) Regulations under subsection (3A) may, in particular, include –
- (a) provision for an exception to arise where a determination has been made by a person specified in the regulations, 25
  - (b) provision requiring the Supreme Court, when they direct the payment of a sum that includes a sum in respect of legal costs, to include a statement to that effect in the direction, and
  - (c) provision that the Supreme Court may not direct the payment of a sum in respect of legal costs exceeding an amount specified in the regulations.” 30
- (6) In subsection (4) for “the foregoing provisions of” substitute “sections 46A, 46B and”.
- 12 Accordingly, in the heading of section 47, at the end insert “: application to Supreme Court”. 35

*Further provision about costs*

- 13 After section 47 insert –
- “47A Further provision about costs**
- (1) The Lord Chancellor may by regulations –
- (a) make provision as to the sums that may be directed to be paid under section 46A or 47(3), whether by specifying rates or 40

- scales or by making other provision as to the calculation of the sums,
- (b) make provision as to the circumstances in which and conditions under which such sums may be paid or directed to be paid, 5
  - (c) make provision requiring such sums to be fixed having regard to regulations under paragraphs (a) and (b), and
  - (d) make provision requiring such sums to be calculated in accordance with such regulations (whether or not that results in the fixing of an amount that the court considers reasonably sufficient to compensate the person concerned). 10
- (2) The power under subsection (1)(d) may not be exercised in respect of sums ordered to be paid by the Supreme Court in respect of expenses incurred in proceedings before that court.
- (3) Regulations under this section may provide that provision as to the calculation of sums (whether in the form of rates or scales or other provision) may be determined by the Lord Chancellor with the consent of the Treasury.” 15

### *Regulations*

- 14 After section 47A insert – 20
- “47B Regulations**
- (1) Regulations under sections 46A, 47 and 47A may, in particular, make different provision in relation to different cases and different classes of case, including different provision in relation to different expenses, trouble and loss, different directions and orders and different areas. 25
  - (2) A power to make regulations under those sections is exercisable by statutory instrument.
  - (3) A statutory instrument containing regulations under those sections is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament, subject to subsection (4). 30
  - (4) A statutory instrument containing (whether alone or with other provision) regulations under section 46A or 47 may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.” 35

### PART 3

#### SAVINGS

- 15 The amendments made by this Schedule do not have effect in relation to directions and orders made by a court in proceedings commenced before the relevant day. 40
- 16 For the purposes of paragraph 15 –
- (a) “the relevant day”, in relation to an amendment, means the day on which the amendment comes into force;



- (b) proceedings commence in the Court Martial Appeal Court when an application for leave to appeal is made or (in the absence of such an application) when notice of appeal is given;
- (c) proceedings commence in the Supreme Court when an application for leave to appeal is made.

5

## SCHEDULE 9

Section 64

### CHANGES TO POWERS TO MAKE SUSPENDED SENTENCE ORDERS: CONSEQUENTIAL AND TRANSITORY PROVISION

#### PART 1

#### CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

10

##### *Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (c.6)*

- 1 In section 163 of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 omit the definition of “operational period”.

##### *Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)*

- 2 The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows. 15
- 3 For the heading of Chapter 3 of Part 12 substitute “SUSPENDED SENTENCE ORDERS”.
- 4 In section 190(2) (limits on power to impose requirements by suspended sentence order), for “189(1)(a)” substitute “189(1A)”.
- 5 In section 191(1) (power to provide for review of suspended sentence order), after “suspended sentence order” insert “that imposes one or more community requirements”. 20
- 6 (1) Section 195 (interpretation of Chapter 3) is amended as follows.
  - (2) For the definition of “operational period” and “supervision period” substitute— 25
    - ““operational period”, in relation to a suspended sentence, has the meaning given by section 189(1)(a);”.
  - (3) After the definition of “sentence of imprisonment” insert—
    - “supervision period”, in relation to a suspended sentence, has the meaning given by section 189(1A).” 30
- 7 (1) Section 196 (meaning of “relevant order”) is amended as follows.
  - (2) In the heading, after ““relevant order”” insert “etc”.
  - (3) After subsection (1) insert—
    - “(1A) In this Chapter “suspended sentence order” means a suspended sentence order that imposes one or more community requirements.” 35
- 8 In section 200(4) (supervision period and operational period where unpaid work requirement imposed by suspended sentence order)—

	(a) for “189(1)(a)” substitute “189(1A)”, and	
	(b) for “189(1)(b)(ii)” substitute “189(1)(a)”.	
9	In section 213(3)(d) (supervision requirement: meaning of “relevant period”) for “189(1)(a)” substitute “189(1A)”.	
10	(1) Paragraph 8 of Schedule 12 (powers of court in case of breach of community requirement or conviction of further offence) is amended as follows.	5
	(2) In sub-paragraph (2), at the beginning of paragraph (c) insert “in the case of a suspended sentence order that imposes one or more community requirements,”.	
	(3) After that paragraph insert –	10
	“(d) in the case of a suspended sentence order that does not impose any community requirements, the court may, subject to section 189(3), amend the order by extending the operational period.”	
	(4) In sub-paragraph (4)(a), for “the community requirements” substitute “any community requirements”.	15
	(5) In sub-paragraph (8), for “the community” substitute “any community”.	
11	In Part 3 of Schedule 12 (amendment of suspended sentence order), before paragraph 13 (and before the italic heading before that paragraph) insert –	
	“ <i>Application of Part</i>	20
	12B This Part of this Schedule applies only in relation to a suspended sentence order that imposes one or more community requirements.”	
12	(1) Schedule 13 (transfer of suspended sentence orders to Scotland or Northern Ireland) is amended as follows.	25
	(2) In paragraph 1(1) (suspended sentence order in respect of an offender residing in Scotland) –	
	(a) after “a suspended sentence order” in the first place those words appear insert “that imposes one or more community requirements”, and	30
	(b) before “a suspended sentence order” in the second place those words appear insert “such”.	
	(3) In paragraph 6(1) (suspended sentence order in respect of an offender residing in Northern Ireland) –	
	(a) after “a suspended sentence order” in the first place those words appear insert “that imposes one or more community requirements”, and	35
	(b) before “a suspended sentence order” in the second place those words appear insert “such”.	
	<i>Criminal Justice Act 2003 (Sentencing) (Transitory Provisions) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/643)</i>	40
13	In the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (Sentencing) (Transitory Provisions) Order 2005 omit –	

- (a) article 2(2) (modifications to section 189 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 pending the commencement of the repeal of section 78 of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000), and
- (b) article 3(2)(a) (modifications to section 189 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 pending the commencement of section 61 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000). 5

*Armed Forces Act 2006 (c. 52)*

- 14 The Armed Forces Act 2006 is amended as follows.
- 15 (1) Section 200 (suspended sentence orders with or without community requirements) is amended as follows. 10
- (2) In the heading omit “with or without community requirements”.
  - (3) Omit subsections (1) to (4) (power of relevant service court to make suspended sentence order with or without community requirements, and meanings of those terms).
  - (4) In subsection (5) (modification of section 189(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 in its application to a relevant service court) – 15
    - (a) for “(b)(ii)” substitute “(a)”,
    - (b) for “the end of sub-paragraph (ii)” substitute ““(imprisonment),””, and
    - (c) in the words treated as substituted, for “(a)” substitute “(i)” and for “(b)” substitute “(ii)”. 20
  - (5) After subsection (6) insert –
    - “(7) In this Chapter “a suspended sentence order with community requirements” means a suspended sentence order that imposes one or more community requirements within the meaning of section 189(7)(c) of the 2003 Act.” 25
- 16 Omit section 201 (provisions of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 that do not apply to suspended sentence orders without community requirements).
- 17 In section 207 (definitions for purposes of Chapter 4 of Part 8) –
- (a) in the definition of “suspended sentence order with community requirements” for “200(3)” substitute “200(7)”, and 30
  - (b) omit the definition of “suspended sentence order without community requirements”.
- 18 (1) Schedule 7 (suspended prison sentence: further conviction or breach of requirement) is amended as follows. 35
- (2) For the heading before paragraph 1 substitute “Modifications of Part 2 of Schedule 12 to the 2003 Act”.
  - (3) In paragraph 1 (modifications of Part 2 of Schedule 12 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003 in case of suspended sentence orders with community requirements) omit “with community requirements”. 40
  - (4) Omit paragraph 2 (modifications of Part 2 of Schedule 12 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003 in case of suspended sentence orders without community requirements) and the heading before that paragraph.

(5)	After paragraph 6 insert – “6A     Paragraph 8(2)(ba) of that Schedule has effect as if at the beginning there were inserted “where the court dealing with the offender is the Crown Court.””	
	<i>Armed Forces Act 2006 (Transitional Provisions etc) Order 2009 (SI 2009/1059)</i>	5
19	In Schedule 2 to the Armed Forces Act 2006 (Transitional Provisions etc) Order 2009 omit paragraph 2(2) (modifications to section 189 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 pending the commencement of the repeal of section 78 of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000).	
	<i>Armed Forces Act 2011</i>	10
20	In Schedule 3 to the Armed Forces Act 2011 (minor amendments of service legislation), in paragraph 17 (amendment to section 200(5) of the Armed Forces Act 2006) omit “paragraph (b) of”.	
PART 2		
TRANSITORY PROVISION		
		15
21	In relation to any time before the coming into force of section 61 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (abolition of sentences of detention in a young offender institution, custody for life etc), section 189 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 has effect with the following modifications –	
	(a) in subsection (1), after the first “imprisonment” insert “or, in the case of a person aged at least 18 but under 21, a sentence of detention in a young offender institution”,	20
	(b) in that subsection, after the second “imprisonment” insert “or detention in a young offender institution”, and	
	(c) in subsection (1B), after “imprisonment” insert “or detention in a young offender institution”.	25
SCHEDULE 10		
Section 82		
REPEAL OF SECTIONS 181 TO 188 OF THE CRIMINAL JUSTICE ACT 2003: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS		
	<i>Prison Act 1952 (c. 52)</i>	30
1	Omit section 49(4A) of the Prison Act 1952 (persons unlawfully at large).	
	<i>Criminal Justice Act 1961 (c. 39)</i>	
2	In section 23 of the Criminal Justice Act 1961 (prison rules) –	
	(a) in subsection (3), for “Subject to subsection (3A), the days” substitute “The days”;	35
	(b) omit subsection (3A).	

*Firearms Act 1968 (c. 27)*

- 3 In section 21 of the Firearms Act 1968 (possession of firearms by persons previously convicted of crime), omit –
- (a) subsection (2A)(d);
  - (b) subsection (2B);
  - (c) in subsection (6), “, (2B)”.

5

*Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (c. 43)*

- 4 Omit section 131(2A) of the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (remand of accused already in custody).

*Road Traffic Offenders Act 1988 (c. 53)*

10

- 5 In section 35A of the Road Traffic Offenders Act 1988 (extension of disqualification where custodial sentence also imposed), omit subsection (4)(c) and (d).

*Football Spectators Act 1989 (c. 37)*

- 6 In the Football Spectators Act 1989, omit –
- (a) section 14E(7) (banning orders);
  - (b) section 18(5) (information).

15

*Prisoners (Return to Custody) Act 1995 (c. 3)*

- 7 Omit section 1(1A) of the Prisoners (Return to Custody) Act 1995 (remaining at large after temporary release).

20

*Goods Vehicles (Licensing of Operators) Act 1995 (c. 23)*

- 8 In Schedule 3 to the Goods Vehicles (Licensing of Operators) Act 1995 (qualifications for standard licence), in paragraph 3(2)(a), for the words from “of 12 months or more” to the end substitute “exceeding 3 months”.

*Crime (Sentences) Act 1997 (c. 43)*

25

- 9 (1) Schedule 1 to the Crime (Sentences) Act 1997 (transfers of prisoners within the British Islands) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 6(4), omit the definitions of “custody plus order” and “intermittent custody order”.
  - (3) In paragraph 8, in sub-paragraphs (2) and (4) –
    - (a) after paragraph (aa) insert “; and”;
    - (b) omit paragraph (ab).
  - (4) In paragraph 9, in sub-paragraphs (2) and (4) –
    - (a) after paragraph (aa) insert “; and”;
    - (b) omit paragraph (ab).

30

35

*Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (c. 6)*

- 10 In section 147A of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (extension of disqualification where custodial sentence also imposed), omit subsection (4)(c) and (d).

*Extradition Act 2003 (c. 41)*

5

- 11 (1) The Extradition Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- (2) In the following provisions, omit “(other than temporarily on licence pursuant to an intermittent custody order under section 183(1)(b) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003)” –
- (a) section 59(11)(b) (return of person to serve remainder of sentence);
  - (b) section 132(11)(b) (return of person to serve remainder of sentence);
  - (c) section 153B(10)(a)(ii) (return of person in pursuance of undertaking).
- (3) In section 216 (interpretation), omit subsection (6A).

10

*Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)*

15

- 12 The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- 13 In section 195 (interpretation of Chapter 3), omit the definitions of “custodial period”, “licence period” and “the number of custodial days”.
- 14 (1) Section 196 (meaning of “relevant order” in Chapter 4) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) –
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “or”;
  - (b) omit paragraph (b);
  - (c) omit paragraph (d) and the word “or” preceding it.
- (3) Omit subsection (2).
- 15 In section 197(1)(a)(i) (meaning of “responsible officer), omit “182(1) or”.
- 16 In section 202(4)(b) (circumstances in which court must not include programme requirement), omit “(or, where the relevant order is a custody plus order or an intermittent custody order, will be)”.
- 17 Omit section 204(4) and (5) (restrictions on imposing curfew requirement).
- 18 In section 213(3) (definition of “relevant period” for supervision requirement), omit paragraphs (b) and (c).
- 19 Omit section 216(2) (requirement to specify area in which offender will reside).
- 20 In section 241 (effect of direction under section 240 or 240A) –
- (a) in subsection (1), omit “or Chapter 3 (prison sentences of less than twelve months)”;
  - (b) omit subsection (2).
- 21 (1) Section 244 (duty to release prisoners) is amended as follows.

20

25

30

35

- (2) Omit subsection (2).
- (3) In subsection (3) –
- (a) omit paragraphs (b) and (c);
  - (b) in paragraph (d), omit “none of which falls within paragraph (c)”.
- 22 Omit section 245 (restrictions on duty to release intermittent custody prisoners). 5
- 23 (1) Section 246 (power to release prisoners on licence early) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), omit “, other than an intermittent custody prisoner,”; 10
  - (b) omit paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it.
- (3) Omit subsection (3).
- (4) In subsection (4)(i), omit from “or, where the sentence is one of intermittent custody” to the end. 15
- (5) In subsection (5) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), omit “or (b), (3)”;
  - (b) in paragraph (c), omit “or (3)(b)(ii)”.
- (6) In subsection (6) –
- (a) omit the definition of “the required custodial days”; 20
  - (b) in the definition of “the requisite custodial period”, omit “other than a sentence of intermittent custody” and “, (b)”;
  - (c) omit the definition of “sentence of intermittent custody”.
- 24 In section 249 (duration of licence) –
- (a) in subsection (1), for “subsections (2) and (3)” substitute “subsection (3)”;
  - (b) omit subsection (2);
  - (c) in subsection (3), omit the words from “and subsection (2)” to the end;
  - (d) omit subsection (4). 30
- 25 In section 250 (licence conditions) –
- (a) omit subsections (2), (2A), (3) and (6);
  - (b) in subsection (7), for the words from “section 264(3)” to the end substitute “and section 264(3) (consecutive terms)”.
- 26 Omit section 251 (licence conditions on re-release of those serving less than 12 months). 35
- 27 In section 252(2) (duty to comply with licence conditions: overseas) –
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “and”;
  - (b) omit paragraph (b).
- 28 Omit section 253(4) (curfew conditions for those subject to intermittent custody order). 40
- 29 In section 260(7) (early removal of persons liable to removal from UK: definition of “requisite custodial period”), omit “, (b)”.

- 30 In section 261(6) (re-entry to UK of offender removed early: definitions), in the definition of “requisite custodial period”, omit “, (b)”.
- 31 Omit section 263(3) (concurrent terms: requirements of licence).
- 32 (1) Section 264 (consecutive terms) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit subsection (1)(c) and the “and” preceding it. 5
- (3) In subsection (6) omit –
- (a) paragraph (a)(iii) and the “and” preceding it;
- (b) paragraph (b).
- 33 Omit section 264A (consecutive terms: intermittent custody).
- 34 Omit section 265(1B) (restriction on consecutive sentences: intermittent custody). 10
- 35 In section 268 (interpretation of Chapter 6), omit the definitions of “intermittent custody prisoner”, “release” and “relevant court order”.
- 36 In section 302 (execution of process between England and Wales and Scotland), omit “paragraph 8(1) of Schedule 10”. 15
- 37 In section 305(1) (interpretation of Part 12) –
- (a) omit the definition of “custody plus order”;
- (b) omit the definition of “intermittent custody order”;
- (c) omit the words “custody plus order, intermittent custody order” (wherever they appear); 20
- (d) in the definition of “responsible officer”, omit the words “a custody plus order, an intermittent custody order”.
- 38 (1) Schedule 12 (breach or amendment of suspended sentence order etc) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 8(2) (powers of court on breach of community requirement or conviction of further offence) – 25
- (a) in paragraph (a), omit “and custodial period”;
- (b) in paragraph (b), for the words from “with either or both” to the end substitute “with the substitution for the original term of a lesser term”. 30
- (3) In paragraph 9(1) (further provision as to order that suspended sentence is to take effect) –
- (a) omit “and custodial period”;
- (b) omit paragraph (a).
- 39 In Schedule 32 (amendments relating to sentencing), omit paragraphs 12(2), (3) and (6), 29, 57, 58 and 68(2). 35

*Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 (c. 28)*

- 40 (1) The Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit section 31 and Schedule 6 (intermittent custody).
- (3) In Schedule 11 (repeals), omit the entries relating to the Criminal Justice Act 2003. 40



*Armed Forces Act 2006 (c. 52)*

- 41 (1) The Armed Forces Act 2006 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 196 (term of sentence etc), omit –
  - (a) the reference to sections 181 and 182 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003;
  - (b) in the reference to Chapter 4 of Part 12 of that Act, the words “custody plus order or”. 5
- (3) Omit sections 197 to 199 (imprisonment with or without custody plus order).
- (4) In section 207 (definitions), omit the definition of “custody plus order”.
- (5) In Schedule 7 (suspended sentence: further conviction or breach of requirement), omit paragraph 9(1)(a) (modification of paragraph 9(1)(a) of Schedule 12 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003). 10
- (6) In Schedule 16 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraphs 222 and 223.

*Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (c. 4)*

- 42 Omit section 20(2) and (3) of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008. 15

*Policing and Crime Act 2009 (c. 26)*

- 43 Omit section 71(10) of the Policing and Crime Act 2009.

*Criminal Justice Act 2003 (Sentencing) (Transitory Provisions) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/643)*

- 44 Article 2(4) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (Sentencing) (Transitory Provisions) Order 2005 is revoked. 20

SCHEDULE 11

AMENDMENT OF ENACTMENTS RELATING TO BAIL

*Bail Act 1976 (c. 63)*

- 1 The Bail Act 1976 is amended as follows.
- 2 In section 2(2) (definitions) – 25
  - (a) insert the following definitions at the appropriate places –
    - ““bail in non-extradition proceedings” means bail in criminal proceedings of the kind mentioned in section 1(1)(a),”;
    - ““custodial sentence” means a sentence or order mentioned in section 76(1) of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 or any corresponding sentence or order imposed or made under any earlier enactment,”; and
  - (b) in the definition of “young person” for “seventeen” substitute “eighteen”. 35

- 
- |   |  |    |
|---|--|----|
| 3 | <p>In section 3(7) (provision relating to parent or guardian being surety for child or young person) –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) for “a child or young person” substitute “a person under the age of seventeen”,</li> <li>(b) for the words “the child or young person”, in both places they appear, substitute “the person”, and</li> <li>(c) in paragraph (a) – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) omit “of a young person”, and</li> <li>(ii) omit “young” in the second place it appears.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | 5  |
| 4 | <p>(1) Section 3AB (conditions for the imposition of electronic monitoring requirements: other persons) is amended as follows.</p> <p>(2) In subsection (1) for “seventeen” substitute “eighteen”.</p> <p>(3) Omit subsection (4).</p>   | 10 |
| 5 | <p>(1) Section 7 (liability to arrest for absconding or breaking conditions of bail) is amended as follows.</p> <p>(2) In subsection (5) for “subsection (6)” substitute “subsections (5A) and (6)”.</p> <p>(3) After subsection (5) insert –</p> <p>“(5A) A justice of the peace may not remand a person in, or commit a person to, custody under subsection (5) if –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the person has attained the age of eighteen,</li> <li>(b) the person was released on bail in non-extradition proceedings,</li> <li>(c) the person has not been convicted of an offence in those proceedings, and</li> <li>(d) it appears to the justice of the peace that there is no real prospect that the person will be sentenced to a custodial sentence in the proceedings.”</li> </ul> <p>(4) In subsection (6) for “the person so brought before the justice” substitute “a person brought before a justice under subsection (4) or (4B)”.</p> | 15 |
| 6 | <p>(1) Section 9A (bail decisions relating to persons aged under 18 who are accused of offences mentioned in Schedule 2 to the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980) is amended as follows.</p> <p>(2) In the heading for “persons aged under 18” substitute “children or young persons”.</p> <p>(3) In subsection (1)(a) for “person aged under 18” substitute “child or young person”.</p> <p>(4) In subsections (2) and (3)(b) after “accused” insert “child or young”.</p>   | 20 |
| 7 | <p>Part 1 of Schedule 1 (bail for defendants accused or convicted of certain imprisonable offences) is amended in accordance with paragraphs 8 to 18.</p>  | 25 |
| 8 | <p>For the heading immediately before paragraph 1 (defendants to whom Part 1 applies) substitute “Application of Part 1”.</p>  | 30 |
| 9 | <p>In paragraph 1 (defendants to whom Part 1 applies) in sub-paragraph (1) after “sub-paragraph (2)” insert “and paragraph 1A”.</p>  | 35 |

- 10 After paragraph 1 insert –
- “1A (1) The paragraphs of this Part of this Schedule mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) do not apply in relation to bail in non-extradition proceedings where –
- (a) the defendant has attained the age of 18, 5
  - (b) the defendant has not been convicted of an offence in those proceedings, and
  - (c) it appears to the court that there is no real prospect that the defendant will be sentenced to a custodial sentence in the proceedings. 10
- (2) The paragraphs are –
- (a) paragraph 2 (refusal of bail where defendant may fail to surrender to custody, commit offences on bail or interfere with witnesses),
  - (b) paragraph 2A (refusal of bail where defendant appears to have committed indictable or either way offence while on bail), and 15
  - (c) paragraph 6 (refusal of bail where defendant has been arrested under section 7).”
- 11 In paragraph 2 (exceptions to bail where defendant may fail to surrender to custody, commit offences on bail or interfere with witnesses) for sub-paragraph (2) substitute – 20
- “(2) Where the defendant falls within paragraph 6B, this paragraph does not apply unless –
- (a) the court is of the opinion mentioned in paragraph 6A, or 25
  - (b) paragraph 6A does not apply by virtue of paragraph 6C.”
- 12 After paragraph 2 insert –
- “2ZA(1) The defendant need not be granted bail if the court is satisfied that there are substantial grounds for believing that the defendant, if released on bail (whether subject to conditions or not), would commit an offence while on bail by engaging in conduct that would, or would be likely to, cause –
- (a) physical or mental injury to an associated person; or
  - (b) an associated person to fear physical or mental injury.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “associated person” means a person who is associated with the defendant within the meaning of section 62 of the Family Law Act 1996.” 35
- 13 For paragraph 2A (refusal of bail where defendant appears to have committed offence while on bail) substitute –
- “2A The defendant need not be granted bail if – 40
- (a) the offence is an indictable offence or an offence triable either way, and
  - (b) it appears to the court that the defendant was on bail in criminal proceedings on the date of the offence.”
- 14 For paragraph 6 (refusal of bail where defendant fails to surrender to
- 45

- custody or has been arrested under section 7) substitute –
- “6 The defendant need not be granted bail if, having previously been released on bail in, or in connection with, the proceedings, the defendant has been arrested in pursuance of section 7.”
- 15 In paragraph 6A (certain drug users to be refused bail unless no significant risk of offending while on bail) for “is satisfied” substitute “is of the opinion”. 5
- 16 In paragraph 9 (considerations to which the court must have regard) –
- (a) for “2A(1), 6(1) or 6A” substitute “2ZA(1)”, and
- (b) after “paragraph 6ZA” insert “or 6A”. 10
- 17 In paragraph 9AA (court to give particular weight to the fact that an under 18 defendant was on bail when the offence was committed) in sub-paragraph (1)(a) for “under the age of 18” substitute “a child or young person”.
- 18 In paragraph 9AB (factors to be given particular weight by the court when making a decision for the purposes of section 2(1)(a), in the case of an under 18 defendant who has failed to surrender) in sub-paragraph (1)(a) for “under the age of 18” substitute “a child or young person”. 15
- 19 Part 1A of Schedule 1 (bail for defendants accused or convicted of imprisonable offences to which Part 1 of that Schedule does not apply) is amended in accordance with paragraphs 20 to 23. 20
- 20 For the heading immediately before paragraph 1 (defendants to whom Part 1A applies) substitute “Application of Part 1A”.
- 21 In paragraph 1 (defendants to whom Part 1A applies) for “The” substitute “Subject to paragraph 1A, the”. 25
- 22 After paragraph 1 insert –
- “1A (1) The paragraphs of this Part of this Schedule mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) do not apply in relation to bail in, or in connection with, proceedings where –
- (a) the defendant has attained the age of 18, 30
- (b) the defendant has not been convicted of an offence in those proceedings, and
- (c) it appears to the court that there is no real prospect that the defendant will be sentenced to a custodial sentence in the proceedings. 35
- (2) The paragraphs are –
- (a) paragraph 2 (refusal of bail for failure to surrender to custody),
- (b) paragraph 3 (refusal of bail where defendant would commit further offences on bail), and 40
- (c) paragraph 7 (refusal of bail in certain circumstances when arrested under section 7).”
- 23 (1) Paragraph 4 (refusal of bail to defendants who are likely to cause injury or fear of injury) is amended as follows.
- (2) The existing words become sub-paragraph (1). 45

- (3) In paragraphs (a) and (b) of that sub-paragraph for “any person other than the defendant”, in both places those words appear, substitute “an associated person”.
- (4) After that sub-paragraph insert –
- “(2) In sub-paragraph (1) “associated person” means a person who is associated with the defendant within the meaning of section 62 of the Family Law Act 1996.” 5
- 24 Part 2 of Schedule 1 (bail for defendants accused or convicted of non-imprisonable offences) is amended in accordance with paragraphs 25 to 27.
- 25 In paragraph 2 (refusal of bail for failure to surrender to custody) after “bail if –” insert – 10
- “(za) the defendant –
- (i) is a child or young person, or
- (ii) has been convicted in the proceedings of an offence;”.
- 26 In paragraph 5 (refusal of bail in certain circumstances when arrested under section 7) after “bail if –” insert – 15
- “(za) the defendant –
- (i) is a child or young person, or
- (ii) has been convicted in the proceedings of an offence;”.
- 27 After paragraph 5 insert – 20
- “6 (1) The defendant need not be granted bail if –
- (a) having been released on bail in, or in connection with, the proceedings for the offence, the defendant has been arrested in pursuance of section 7, and
- (b) the court is satisfied that there are substantial grounds for believing that the defendant, if released on bail (whether subject to conditions or not), would commit an offence while on bail by engaging in conduct that would, or would be likely to, cause – 25
- (i) physical or mental injury to an associated person, or
- (ii) an associated person to fear physical or mental injury. 30
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “associated person” means a person who is associated with the defendant within the meaning of section 62 of the Family Law Act 1996.” 35
- 28 (1) Paragraph 2 of Part 3 of Schedule 1 (references to previous grants of bail) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph (b) for “section 14(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003” substitute “paragraph 13 of Schedule 11 to the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 40
- (3) In paragraph (c) for “section 15(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003” substitute “paragraph 14 of Schedule 11 to the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.

- (4) After paragraph (f) insert “;
- (g) as respects the reference in paragraph 6 of Part 2 of this Schedule, bail granted before the coming into force of that paragraph.”

*Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 (c. 33)* 5

- 29 In section 25 of the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 (no bail for defendants charged with or convicted of homicide or rape after previous conviction for such offences) in subsection (1) for “is satisfied” substitute “is of the opinion”.

*Consequential amendment* 10

- 30 In section 38(2A) of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (considerations applicable to paragraph 2 of Part 1 of Schedule 1 to the 1976 Act to be taken into account by custody officer when making decision about bail after charge) for “paragraph 2(2)” substitute “paragraphs 1A and 2(2)”.

SCHEDULE 12

Section 98

15

REMANDS OF CHILDREN OTHERWISE THAN ON BAIL: MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

*Criminal Justice Act 1948 (c. 58)*

- 1 Section 27 of the Criminal Justice Act 1948 (remand of persons aged 17 to 20) is amended as follows. 20
- 2 In the heading, for “17” substitute “18”.
- 3 In subsection (1) for “seventeen” substitute “eighteen”.

*Prison Act 1952 (c. 52)*

- 4 In section 43(1) of the Prison Act 1952 (power of Secretary of State to provide young offender institutions, secure training centres etc), at the end of paragraph (d) insert “and in which children who have been remanded to youth detention accommodation under section 84(4) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 may be detained”. 25

*Children and Young Persons Act 1969 (c. 54)*

- 5 The Children and Young Persons Act 1969 is amended as follows. 30
- 6 Omit section 23 (remands and committals to local authority accommodation).
- 7 Omit section 23AA (electronic monitoring of conditions of remand).
- 8 Omit section 23A (liability to arrest for breaking conditions of remand).
- 9 (1) Section 23B (report by local authority in certain cases where person remanded on bail) is amended as follows. 35

- (2) In subsection (2), at the end insert “under section 84(3) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.”
- (3) In subsection (3), for “section 23(2) of this Act” substitute “section 85(2) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.
- (4) In subsection (6) – 5
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “17” substitute “18”, and
- (b) for paragraph (b) and the “and” at the end of that paragraph substitute –
- “(b) the requirements in section 87(3) and (4) or 88(3) and (4) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 would have been fulfilled if the person had not been remanded on bail, and”.
- 10
- 10 (1) Section 32 (detention of absentees) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1A) – 15
- (a) in paragraph (b), omit sub-paragraph (iii), and
- (b) after that paragraph insert –
- “(c) from a place in which the child or young person has been accommodated pursuant to a remand under section 84 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011,”.
- 20
- (3) In subsection (1B), for the “or” at the end of paragraph (b) substitute –
- “(ba) the place mentioned in subsection (1A)(c); or”.
- (4) In subsection (1C), for paragraph (d) and the “or” preceding that paragraph substitute –
- “(d) where the child or young person was accommodated pursuant to a remand under section 84(3) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 (remands to local authority accommodation), the designated authority within the meaning of section 99(1) of that Act; or
- (e) where the child or young person was accommodated pursuant to a remand under section 84(4) of that Act (remands to youth detention accommodation), the Secretary of State.”
- 25  
30
- 11 In section 34(1) (transitional modifications of Part 1 for persons of specified ages) – 35
- (a) in paragraph (c) omit “, 23(1)”, and
- (b) omit paragraph (e).
- 12 In section 69 (orders and regulations etc) omit subsection (4A).

*Local Authority Social Services Act 1970 (c. 42)*

- 13 In Schedule 1 to the Local Authority Social Services Act 1970 (social services 40

functions for the purposes of the Act), at the end insert –

“Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011			
Section 85		Functions in relation to a child remanded to local authority accommodation.”	5

*Bail Act 1976 (c. 63)*

- 14 The Bail Act 1976 is amended as follows.
- 15 In section 3AA (conditions for the imposition of electronic monitoring requirements: persons under the age of seventeen), for subsection (11) substitute – 10
- “(11) In this section the reference to being remanded to local authority accommodation is to be construed in accordance with section 85 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.” 15
- 16 In section 7(6) (arrest for absconding or breaking conditions of bail: powers of justice), for the words from “section 23” to the end of the subsection substitute “section 84 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 (remands of children otherwise than on bail)”. 16
- 17 In Part 3 of Schedule 1 (supplementary provisions about persons entitled to bail: interpretation), in paragraph 3, for the words from “the care of” to the end of the paragraph substitute “accommodation pursuant to a remand under section 84(3) or (4) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 (remands to local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation).” 20
- 25

*Child Abduction Act 1984 (c. 37)*

- 18 The Child Abduction Act 1984 is amended as follows.
- 19 In section 1(8) (offence of child abduction: modifications in relation to children remanded to local authority accommodation etc), for “to a local authority accommodation” substitute “otherwise than on bail”. 30
- 20 In paragraph 2 of the Schedule (modifications of section 1 in case of children in places of safety etc) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), in paragraph (b) omit “section 23 of the Children and Young Persons Act 1969,”,
- (b) in that sub-paragraph, at the end of paragraph (ba) insert “; or 35
- (bb) remanded to local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation under section 84 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.”, and
- (c) in sub-paragraph (2)(a), after “place of safety” insert “, local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation”. 40



*Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (c. 60)*

- 21 In section 17(1)(ca) of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (powers of entry and search of premises for purpose of arresting child or young person remanded to local authority accommodation), for the words from “or committed” to “that Act” substitute “to local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation under section 84 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 5

*Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (c. 23)*

- 22 In section 22(11) of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (time limits in relation to preliminary stages of criminal proceedings: interpretation), in the definition of “custody” for the words from “to which” to “Act 1969” substitute “or youth detention accommodation to which a person is remanded under section 84 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 10

*Children Act 1989 (c. 41)* 15

- 23 The Children Act 1989 is amended as follows.
- 24 In section 21(2)(c) (duty to receive and provide accommodation for certain kinds of children) omit sub-paragraph (i) (children on remand under section 23(1) of the Children and Young Persons Act 1969).
- 25 In Schedule 12 (minor amendments), omit paragraph 28(b). 20

*Criminal Justice Act 1991 (c. 53)*

- 26 The Criminal Justice Act 1991 is amended as follows.
- 27 Omit section 60(1).
- 28 In section 60(3) (applications under section 25 of the Children Act 1989 in case of child remanded or committed to local authority accommodation) – 25
- (a) leave out “or committed”, and
  - (b) after “local authority accommodation” insert “under section 84(3) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”.
- 29 Omit section 61 (provision by local authorities of secure accommodation).
- 30 Omit section 61A (cost of secure accommodation). 30
- 31 In section 92(3) (application of prisoner escort provisions to persons remanded etc under section 23 of the Children and Young Persons Act 1969) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), for the words from “or committed” to “1969 Act” substitute “to local authority accommodation or youth detention accommodation under section 84 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”, and 35
  - (b) in paragraph (b) for “such accommodation” substitute “accommodation in which a person is or is to be accommodated pursuant to such a remand”. 40

*Bail (Amendment) Act 1993 (c. 26)*

- 32 In section 1(10) of the Bail (Amendment) Act 1993 (prosecution right of appeal against grant of bail: application to children and young persons) –
- (a) for the words from “child” to “Act 1969” substitute “person under the age of 18”, and 5
  - (b) in paragraph (b) for the words from “section 23” to “accommodation” substitute “Chapter 3 of Part 3 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011 (remands of children otherwise than on bail)”.

*Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 (c. 33)* 10

- 33 The Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 is amended as follows.
- 34 Omit sections 19(1) and (3), 21 and 23.
- 35 In Schedule 9 (minor amendments) omit paragraph 38.

*Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (c. 37)*

- 36 The Crime and Disorder Act 1998 is amended as follows. 15
- 37 In section 38(4)(d) (definition of “youth justice services”: placements pursuant to remands to local authority accommodation), for the words from “or committed” to “1969 Act”)” substitute “to such accommodation under section 84(3) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 20
- 38 In section 41(5) (functions of the Youth Justice Board for England and Wales) omit –
- (a) paragraph (i)(iii) (agreements for the provision of accommodation for detention under section 23(4)(c) of the Children and Young Persons Act 1969 as modified by section 98 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998), and 25
  - (b) paragraph (k) (assistance to local authorities in discharging duty under section 61 of the Criminal Justice Act 1991).
- 39 In section 57A(3) (use of live link for accused’s attendance at preliminary or sentencing hearing: interpretation), in paragraph (a) of the definition of “custody”, for the words from “to which” to “Act 1969” substitute “or youth detention accommodation to which a person is remanded under section 84 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”. 30
- 40 Omit sections 97 and 98.

*Access to Justice Act 1999 (c. 22)* 35

- 41 In Schedule 4 to the Access to Justice Act 1999 (amendments consequential on Part 1), omit paragraphs 4, 6 and 7.

*Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (c. 6)*

- 42 The Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 is amended as follows.
- 43 In section 101 (taking account of remands in relation to a detention and training order) – 40

- (a) in subsection (11), for paragraph (c) and the “or” at the end of that paragraph substitute –  
     “(c) remanded to youth detention accommodation under section 84(4) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011; or”, and 5
- (b) in subsection (12) omit the words from “and in that subsection” to the end of the subsection.
- 44 In Schedule 9 (consequential amendments), omit paragraphs 93(b) and 126.
- Care Standards Act 2000 (c. 14)*
- 45 In Schedule 4 to the Care Standards Act 2000 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraphs 3 and 17. 10
- Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (c. 43)*
- 46 (1) Schedule 7 to the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (minor and consequential amendments) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 4(2), in the entry for the Children and Young Persons Act 1969, omit the words from “section 23(4)” to “15 and 16 year old boys)),”. 15
- (3) Omit paragraph 39.
- Criminal Justice and Police Act 2001 (c. 16)*
- 47 In the Criminal Justice and Police Act 2001, omit sections 130, 132 and 133.
- Courts Act 2003 (c. 39)* 20
- 48 In Schedule 8 to the Courts Act 2003 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraph 135.
- Extradition Act 2003 (c. 41)*
- 49 In the Extradition Act 2003, omit section 201.
- Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)* 25
- 50 The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- 51 In section 242 (interpretation of provisions about crediting periods of remand in custody) –
- (a) in subsection (2)(b), for the words from “or committed” to “that section” substitute “to youth detention accommodation under section 84(4) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011”, and 30
- (b) omit subsection (3).
- 52 In Schedule 32 (amendments relating to sentencing), omit paragraph 15.
- Criminal Defence Service Act 2006 (c. 9)* 35
- 53 In section 4(2) of the Criminal Defence Service Act 2006 (provisions to which certain consequential amendments apply), omit paragraphs (a) and (b).

*Violent Crime Reduction Act 2006 (c. 38)*

- 54 In the Violent Crime Reduction Act 2006, omit section 61.

*Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (c. 4)*

- 55 In Schedule 26 to the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraph 5. 5

*Children and Young Persons Act 2008 (c. 23)*

- 56 In Schedule 1 to the Children and Young Persons Act 2008 (children looked after by local authorities: supplementary and consequential provision), omit paragraph 8.

*Offender Management Act 2007 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2008 (SI 2008/912)* 10

- 57 In Schedule 1 to the Offender Management Act 2007 (Consequential Amendments) Order 2008 (amendments of Acts), omit paragraph 13(6).

*Policing and Crime Act 2009 (c. 26)*

- 58 In paragraph 14(3) of Schedule 5A to the Policing and Crime Act 2009 (detention order for breach of injunction: meaning of youth detention accommodation) for paragraph (c) substitute – 15  
     “(c) a secure children’s home, as defined by section 95(9) of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2011.”

SCHEDULE 13

Section 102 20

CREDITING OF TIME IN CUSTODY: ARMED FORCES AMENDMENTS

- 1 The Armed Forces Act 2006 is amended as follows.
- 2 In section 246 (crediting of time in service custody: terms of imprisonment and detention), for subsections (2) to (5) substitute –
- “(2) The number of days for which the offender was kept in service custody in connection with the offence in question or any related offence since being so charged is to count as time served by the offender as part of the sentence. 25  
 But this is subject to subsections (2A) to (2C).
- (2A) If, on any day on which the offender was kept in service custody, the offender was also detained in connection with any other matter, that day is not to count as time served. 30
- (2B) A day counts as time served –
- (a) in relation to only one sentence, and
- (b) only once in relation to that sentence. 35

- (2C) A day is not to count as time served as part of any period of 28 days served by the offender before automatic release (see section 255B(1) of the 2003 Act).”
- 3 (1) Section 247 (crediting of time in service custody: supplementary) is amended as follows. 5
- (2) In subsection (2) –
- (a) after “in connection with other offences” insert “(but see section 246(2B))”, and
- (b) omit “, or has also been detained in connection with other matters”.
- (3) After subsection (2) insert – 10
- “(2A) The reference in section 246(2A) to detention in connection with any other matter does not include remand in custody in connection with another offence but includes –
- (a) detention pursuant to any custodial sentence;
- (b) committal in default of payment of any sum of money; 15
- (c) committal for want of sufficient distress to satisfy any sum of money;
- (d) committal for failure to do or abstain from doing anything required to be done or left undone.”
- (4) In subsection (4) for “the reference in section 246(2)” substitute “the references in section 246(2) and (2B)”. 20
- 4 In section 373(3) (orders, regulations and rules) –
- (a) after paragraph (e) insert “or”, and
- (b) omit paragraph (g) and the “or” preceding it.
- 5 In Schedule 16 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraph 228. 25

#### SCHEDULE 14

Section 103

##### PRISONERS SERVING LESS THAN 12 MONTHS: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

- 1 The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- 2 (1) Section 244 (duty to release prisoners on licence) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) – 30
- (a) after “section” in the first place it appears insert “243A or”;
- (b) after “the requisite custodial period” insert “for the purposes of this section”.
- (3) In subsection (3) –
- (a) for “In this section” substitute “For the purposes of this section”; 35
- (b) in paragraph (a) –
- (i) for “any” substitute “a”;
- (ii) after “the Sentencing Act” insert “for such a term”.

- 3 In section 246(6) (power to release prisoners early: definitions), in the definition of “the requisite custodial period”, after “has the meaning given by” insert “paragraph (a) or (b) of section 243A(3) or (as the case may be)”.
- 4 (1) Section 249 (duration of licence) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), after “a fixed-term prisoner” insert “, other than one to whom section 243A applies,”. 5
- (3) After subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) Where a prisoner to whom section 243A applies is released on licence, the licence shall, subject to any revocation under section 254 or 255, remain in force until the date on which, but for the release, the prisoner would have served one-half of the sentence. 10  
This is subject to subsection (3).”
- (4) In subsection (3) –
- (a) for “Subsection (1) has” substitute “Subsections (1) and (1A) have”;
- (b) omit “and (4)”. 15
- 5 In section 250(4) (licence conditions) omit “for a term of twelve months or more” and “such” in the first place it occurs.
- 6 In section 253(3) (period for which curfew condition to remain in force), after “fall to be released” insert “unconditionally under section 243A or”.
- 7 In section 260 (early removal of prisoners liable to removal from UK) – 20
- (a) in subsection (5), after “section” in the second place it appears insert “243A,”;
- (b) in subsection (7), after “has the meaning given by” insert “paragraph (a) or (b) of section 243A(3) or (as the case may be)”.
- 8 (1) Section 261 (re-entry to UK of offender removed early) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In subsection (5), for “section 244” substitute “section 243A or 244 (as the case may be)”.
- (3) In subsection (6) –
- (a) in the definition of “requisite custodial period”, after “has the meaning given by” insert “paragraph (a) or (b) of section 243A(3) or (as the case may be)”;
- (b) in the definition of “sentence expiry date” –
- (i) after “but for his” insert “release from prison and”;
- (ii) for “ceased to be subject to a licence” substitute “served the whole of the sentence”. 30 35
- 9 In section 263(2) (concurrent terms) –
- (a) after paragraph (a) insert –
- “(aa) the offender’s release is to be unconditional if section 243A so requires in respect of each of the sentences (and in any other case is to be on licence),”; 40
- (b) in paragraph (b), after “each of the others” insert “to which that section applies”;
- (c) in paragraph (c), after “release under this Chapter” insert “(unless that release is unconditional)”. 45

- 10 In section 264 (consecutive terms) –
- (a) in subsection (2), omit “on licence”;
  - (b) in subsection (3), for “any of the terms of imprisonment is a term of twelve months or more” substitute “the aggregate length of the terms of imprisonment is 12 months or more”; 5
  - (c) after subsection (3) insert –
    - “(3A) Where the aggregate length of the terms of imprisonment is less than 12 months, the offender’s release under this Chapter is to be unconditional.”;
  - (d) omit subsections (4) and (5); 10
  - (e) in subsection (6)(a)(ii) –
    - (i) for “a term of twelve months or more” substitute “any other sentence”;
    - (ii) for “the term” substitute “the sentence”;
  - (f) in subsection (7), omit “of 12 months or more”. 15
- 11 In section 267 (alteration by order of proportion of sentence), after “any reference in” insert “section 243A(3)(a),”.
- 12 The heading of Chapter 6 of Part 12 becomes “Release, licences and recall”.
- 13 The repeal by section 303(a) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 of sections 33 to 51 of the Criminal Justice Act 1991 has effect in relation to any sentence of imprisonment which – 20
- (a) is of less than 12 months (whether or not such a sentence is imposed to run concurrently or consecutively with another such sentence), and
  - (b) is imposed in respect of an offence committed on or after 4 April 2005, 25
- and paragraph 14 of Schedule 2 to the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (Commencement No. 8 and Transitional and Savings Provisions) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/950) is accordingly revoked.

SCHEDULE 15

Section 111 30

APPLICATION OF SECTIONS 100 TO 110 AND TRANSITIONAL AND TRANSITORY PROVISIONS

- 1 In this Schedule –
- (a) “the commencement date”, in relation to any of sections 100 to 110, means the day appointed under section 134 for the coming into force of that section; 35
  - (b) “Chapter 6” means Chapter 6 of Part 12 of the 2003 Act, as amended by those sections;
  - (c) “the 2003 Act” means the Criminal Justice Act 2003.
- 2 (1) The following provisions apply in relation to any person who falls to be released under Chapter 6 on or after the commencement date – 40
- (a) section 100 (but this is subject to sub-paragraph (2));
  - (b) in section 102 –
    - (i) subsections (1) to (7), (9) and (11) so far as they relate to section 240ZA of the 2003 Act, and

- (ii) subsection (10);
  - (c) section 103;
  - (d) section 107;
  - (e) section 108.
- (2) Where a court, before the commencement date, has given a direction under section 240(3) of the 2003 Act – 5
- (a) if the number of days in relation to which the direction is given is greater than the number of days calculated under section 240ZA of the 2003 Act, the direction continues to have effect (in place of section 240ZA); 10
  - (b) in any other case, the direction ceases to have effect.
- 3 The following provisions apply in relation to any person sentenced on or after the commencement date –
- (a) section 101;
  - (b) in section 102 – 15
    - (i) subsections (1) to (7), (9) and (11) so far as they relate to section 240A of the 2003 Act, and
    - (ii) subsection (8).
- 4 The amendments made by section 104 do not affect the release under Chapter 6 of any prisoner before the commencement date. 20
- 5 Section 105 applies in relation to any person recalled under section 254 of the 2003 Act before the commencement date (as well as in relation to any person recalled under that section on or after that date).
- 6 Section 106 applies in relation to any person recalled under that section on or after the commencement date. 25
- 7 Section 110 applies in relation to any person who, on the commencement date, has served the relevant part of the sentence (as well as in relation to any person who, on that date, has not served that part).

## SCHEDULE 16

Section 114

### LIFE SENTENCE FOR SECOND LISTED OFFENCE ETC: NEW SCHEDULE 15B TO CRIMINAL JUSTICE ACT 2003 30

In the Criminal Justice Act 2003, after Schedule 15A insert –

“SCHEDULE 15B      Sections 224A, 226A and 246A

OFFENCES LISTED FOR THE PURPOSES OF SECTIONS 224A, 226A AND 246A

#### PART 1 35

OFFENCES UNDER THE LAW OF ENGLAND AND WALES LISTED FOR THE PURPOSES OF SECTIONS 224A(1), 224A(4), 226A AND 246A

The following offences to the extent that they are offences under the law of England and Wales –



1	Manslaughter.	
2	An offence under section 4 of the Offences against the Person Act 1861 (soliciting murder).	
3	An offence under section 18 of that Act (wounding with intent to cause grievous bodily harm).	5
4	An offence under section 16 of the Firearms Act 1968 (possession of a firearm with intent to endanger life).	
5	An offence under section 17(1) of that Act (use of a firearm to resist arrest).	
6	An offence under section 18 of that Act (carrying a firearm with criminal intent).	10
7	An offence of robbery under section 8 of the Theft Act 1968 where, at some time during the commission of the offence, the offender had in his possession a firearm or an imitation firearm within the meaning of the Firearms Act 1968.	15
8	An offence under section 1 of the Protection of Children Act 1978 (indecent images of children).	
9	An offence under section 56 of the Terrorism Act 2000 (directing terrorist organisation).	
10	An offence under section 57 of that Act (possession of article for terrorist purposes).	20
11	An offence under section 59 of that Act (inciting terrorism overseas) if the offender is liable on conviction on indictment to imprisonment for life.	
12	An offence under section 47 of the Anti-terrorism, Crime and Security Act 2001 (use etc of nuclear weapons).	25
13	An offence under section 50 of that Act (assisting or inducing certain weapons-related acts overseas).	
14	An offence under section 113 of that Act (use of noxious substance or thing to cause harm or intimidate).	30
15	An offence under section 1 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 (rape).	
16	An offence under section 2 of that Act (assault by penetration).	
17	An offence under section 4 of that Act (causing a person to engage in sexual activity without consent) if the offender is liable on conviction on indictment to imprisonment for life.	35
18	An offence under section 5 of that Act (rape of a child under 13).	
19	An offence under section 6 of that Act (assault of a child under 13 by penetration).	
20	An offence under section 7 of that Act (sexual assault of a child under 13).	40
21	An offence under section 8 of that Act (causing or inciting a child under 13 to engage in sexual activity).	

22	An offence under section 9 of that Act (sexual activity with a child).	
23	An offence under section 10 of that Act (causing or inciting a child to engage in sexual activity).	
24	An offence under section 11 of that Act (engaging in sexual activity in the presence of a child).	5
25	An offence under section 12 of that Act (causing a child to watch a sexual act).	
26	An offence under section 14 of that Act (arranging or facilitating commission of a child sex offence).	10
27	An offence under section 15 of that Act (meeting a child following sexual grooming etc).	
28	An offence under section 25 of that Act (sexual activity with a child family member) if the offender is aged 18 or over at the time of the offence.	15
29	An offence under section 26 of that Act (inciting a child family member to engage in sexual activity) if the offender is aged 18 or over at the time of the offence.	
30	An offence under section 30 of that Act (sexual activity with a person with a mental disorder impeding choice) if the offender is liable on conviction on indictment to imprisonment for life.	20
31	An offence under section 31 of that Act (causing or inciting a person with a mental disorder to engage in sexual activity) if the offender is liable on conviction on indictment to imprisonment for life.	25
32	An offence under section 34 of that Act (inducement, threat or deception to procure sexual activity with a person with a mental disorder) if the offender is liable on conviction on indictment to imprisonment for life.	
33	An offence under section 35 of that Act (causing a person with a mental disorder to engage in or agree to engage in sexual activity by inducement etc) if the offender is liable on conviction on indictment to imprisonment for life.	30
34	An offence under section 47 of that Act (paying for sexual services of a child) against a person aged under 16.	35
35	An offence under section 48 of that Act (causing or inciting child prostitution or pornography).	
36	An offence under section 49 of that Act (controlling a child prostitute or a child involved in pornography).	
37	An offence under section 50 of that Act (arranging or facilitating child prostitution or pornography).	40
38	An offence under section 62 of that Act (committing an offence with intent to commit a sexual offence) if the offender is liable on conviction on indictment to imprisonment for life.	

39	An offence under section 5 of the Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 (causing or allowing the death of a child or vulnerable adult).	
40	An offence under section 5 of the Terrorism Act 2006 (preparation of terrorist acts).	5
41	An offence under section 9 of that Act (making or possession of radioactive device or materials).	
42	An offence under section 10 of that Act (misuse of radioactive devices or material and misuse and damage of facilities).	
43	An offence under section 11 of that Act (terrorist threats relating to radioactive devices, materials or facilities).	10
44	(1) An attempt to commit an offence specified in the preceding paragraphs of this Part of this Schedule (“a listed offence”) or murder.	
	(2) Conspiracy to commit a listed offence or murder.	15
	(3) Incitement to commit a listed offence or murder.	
	(4) An offence under Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 in relation to which a listed offence or murder is the offence (or one of the offences) which the person intended or believed would be committed.	20
	(5) Aiding, abetting, counselling or procuring the commission of a listed offence.	

PART 2

FURTHER OFFENCES UNDER THE LAW OF ENGLAND AND WALES LISTED FOR THE PURPOSES OF SECTIONS 224A(4) AND 226A	25
--	----

The following offences to the extent that they are offences under the law of England and Wales—

45	Murder.	
46	An offence under section 1 of the Sexual Offences Act 1956 (rape).	
47	An offence under section 5 of that Act (intercourse with a girl under 13).	30
48	(1) An attempt to commit an offence specified in the preceding paragraphs of this Part of this Schedule (“a listed offence”).	
	(2) Conspiracy to commit a listed offence.	
	(3) Incitement to commit a listed offence.	35
	(4) An offence under Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 in relation to which a listed offence is the offence (or one of the offences) which the person intended or believed would be committed.	
	(5) Aiding, abetting, counselling or procuring the commission of a listed offence.	40

## PART 3

OFFENCES UNDER SERVICE LAW LISTED FOR THE PURPOSES OF SECTIONS 224A(4)  
AND 226A

- |    |  |    |
|----|--|----|
| 49 | An offence under section 70 of the Army Act 1955, section 70 of the Air Force Act 1955 or section 42 of the Naval Discipline Act 1957 as respects which the corresponding civil offence (within the meaning of the Act in question) is an offence specified in Part 1 or 2 of this Schedule. | 5  |
| 50 | (1) An offence under section 42 of the Armed Forces Act 2006 as respects which the corresponding offence under the law of England and Wales (within the meaning given by that section) is an offence specified in Part 1 or 2 of this Schedule.  | 10 |
|    | (2) Section 48 of the Armed Forces Act 2006 (attempts, conspiracy etc) applies for the purposes of this paragraph as if the reference in subsection (3)(b) of that section to any of the following provisions of that Act were a reference to this paragraph.                                | 15 |

## PART 4

OFFENCES UNDER THE LAW OF SCOTLAND, NORTHERN IRELAND OR A MEMBER  
STATE OTHER THAN THE UNITED KINGDOM LISTED FOR THE PURPOSES OF  
SECTIONS 224A(4) AND 226A

- |    |   |    |
|----|---|----|
| 51 | An offence for which the person was convicted in Scotland, Northern Ireland or a member State other than the United Kingdom and which, if done in England and Wales at the time of the conviction, would have constituted an offence specified in Part 1 or 2 of this Schedule. | 25 |
|----|---|----|

## PART 5

## INTERPRETATION

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 52 | In this Schedule “imprisonment for life” includes custody for life and detention for life.” |  |
|----|---|--|

## SCHEDULE 17

Section 114

30

LIFE SENTENCE FOR SECOND LISTED OFFENCE: CONSEQUENTIAL AND TRANSITORY  
PROVISION

## PART 1

## CONSEQUENTIAL PROVISION

*Mental Health Act 1983 (c. 20)*

35

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | In section 37 of the Mental Health Act 1983 (powers of courts to order hospital admission) in subsection (1A), after paragraph (b) insert –<br>“(ba) under section 224A of the Criminal Justice Act 2003,”. |  |
|---|---|--|

*Criminal Justice Act 1988 (c. 33)*

- 2 In section 36 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (reviews of sentencing) in subsection (2)(b)(iii) after “section” insert “224A,”.

*Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (c. 6)*

- 3 The Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 is amended as follows. 5
- 4 In section 12 (absolute and conditional discharge) in subsection (1) before “225(2)” insert “224A,”.
- 5 In section 130 (compensation orders against convicted persons) in subsection (2) before “225(2)” insert “224A,”.
- 6 In section 146 (driving disqualification for any offence) in subsection (2) before “225(2)” insert “224A,”. 10
- 7 In section 164 (interpretation) in subsection (3)(c) after “section” insert “224A,”.

*Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)*

- 8 The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows. 15
- 9 In section 108 (offences committed by defendant when a child), at the end insert –
- “(4) Subsection (2) does not prevent the admission of evidence of a previous conviction for the purposes of establishing whether section 224A applies.” 20
- 10 In section 142 (purposes of sentencing: offenders aged 18 and over) in subsection (2)(c) –
- (a) after “weapon)” insert “, under section 224A of this Act (life sentence for second listed offence for certain dangerous offenders)”, and
- (b) for “(dangerous offenders)” substitute “(imprisonment or detention for life for certain dangerous offenders)”. 25
- 11 In section 150 (community sentence not available where sentence fixed by law etc) at the end of paragraph (ca) (but before the “or”) insert –
- “(cb) falls to be imposed under section 224A of this Act (life sentence for second listed offence for certain dangerous offenders)”,. 30
- 12 In section 152 (general restrictions on imposing discretionary custodial sentence) in subsection (1)(b) before “225(2)” insert “224A,”.
- 13 In section 153 (length of discretionary custodial sentences: general provision) in subsection (1) before “225” insert “224A,”. 35
- 14 In section 163 (general power of Crown Court to fine offender convicted on indictment) before “225(2)” insert “224A,”.

- 
- 15 Before section 224 insert –
- “Interpretation”.*
- 16 After section 224 (and before section 224A) insert –
- “Life sentences”.*
- 17 After section 226 insert – 5
- “Extended sentences”.*
- 18 Before section 231 insert –
- “Supplementary”.*
- 19 (1) Section 231 (appeals where convictions set aside) is amended as follows.
- (2) Before subsection (1) insert – 10
- “(A1) Subsection (2) applies where –
- (a) a sentence has been imposed on a person under section 224A,
- (b) a previous conviction of that person has been subsequently set aside on appeal, and
- (c) without that conviction, the previous offence condition in section 224A(4) would not have been met.” 15
- (3) In subsection (1) for “This section” substitute “Subsection (2) also”.
- (4) After subsection (2) insert –
- “(3) Subsection (4) applies where –
- (a) a sentence has been imposed on a person under section 224A, 20
- (b) a previous sentence imposed on that person has been subsequently modified on appeal, and
- (c) taking account of that modification, the previous offence condition in section 224A(4) would not have been met.
- (4) Notwithstanding anything in section 18 of the Criminal Appeal Act 1968, notice of appeal against the sentence mentioned in subsection (3)(a) may be given at any time within 28 days from the date on which the previous sentence was modified.” 25
- 20 After section 232 insert –
- “232A Certificates of conviction** 30
- Where –
- (a) on any date after the commencement of Schedule 15B a person is convicted in England and Wales of an offence listed in that Schedule, and
- (b) the court by or before which the person is so convicted states in open court that the person has been convicted of such an offence on that date, and 35
- (c) that court subsequently certifies that fact,

that certificate is evidence, for the purposes of section 224A, that the person was convicted of such an offence on that date.”

- 21 In section 305(4) (interpretation of Part 12) after paragraph (ba) insert –  
“(bb) a sentence falls to be imposed under section 224A if the court is obliged to pass a sentence of imprisonment for life under that section.” 5

*Coroners and Justice Act 2009 (c. 25)*

- 22 In section 125(6) of the Coroners and Justice Act 2009 (sentencing guidelines: duty of court) after paragraph (d) insert –  
“(da) section 224A of that Act (life sentence for second listed offence for certain dangerous offenders);”. 10

PART 2

TRANSITORY PROVISION

- 23 (1) In relation to any time before the coming into force of section 61 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (abolition of sentences of detention in a young offender institution, custody for life etc), Part 12 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (sentencing) has effect with the following modifications. 15
- (2) In section 224A (life sentence for second listed offence) –  
(a) in subsection (2), after “imprisonment for life” insert “or, in the case of a person aged at least 18 but under 21, custody for life”, and 20  
(b) in subsection (3), after “more” insert “or, if the person is aged at least 18 but under 21, a sentence of detention in a young offender institution for such a period”.

SCHEDULE 18

Section 115 25

NEW EXTENDED SENTENCES: CONSEQUENTIAL AND TRANSITORY PROVISION

PART 1

CONSEQUENTIAL PROVISION

*Juries Act 1974 (c. 23)*

- 1 In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Juries Act 1974 (persons disqualified from jury service) in paragraph 6(d), before “227” insert “226A, 226B,”. 30

*Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 (c. 53)*

- 2 In section 5 of the Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 (sentences excluded from rehabilitation under that Act) in subsection (1)(f), before “227” insert “226A, 226B,”. 35

*Criminal Justice Act 1982 (c. 48)*

- 3 In section 32 of the Criminal Justice Act 1982 (early release of prisoners) in subsection (1)(a), before “227” insert “226A or”.

*Road Traffic Offenders Act 1988 (c. 53)*

- 4 In section 35A of the Road Traffic Offenders Act 1988 (extension of disqualification where custodial sentence imposed as well as driving disqualification) in subsection (4) after paragraph (d) insert—
- “(da) where section 226A of that Act (extended sentence for certain violent or sexual offences: persons 18 or over) applies in relation to the custodial sentence, a period equal to two-thirds of the term imposed pursuant to section 226A(5)(a) of that Act after that term has been reduced by any relevant discount; 10
- (db) where section 226B of that Act (extended sentence for certain violent or sexual offences: persons under 18) applies in relation to the custodial sentence, a period equal to two-thirds of the term imposed pursuant to section 226B(3)(a) of that Act after that term has been reduced by any relevant discount;” 15

*Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (c. 6)* 20

- 5 The Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 is amended as follows.

- 6 In section 76 (meaning of “custodial sentence”) in subsection (1)(bc) after “section” insert “226B or”.

- 7 (1) Section 99 (conversion of sentence of detention to sentence of imprisonment) is amended as follows. 25

(2) In subsection (3), omit the words from “; and” to the end.

(3) After that subsection insert—

“(3A) Where the Secretary of State gives a direction under subsection (1) above in relation to an offender serving an extended sentence of detention imposed under Chapter 5 of Part 12 of the Criminal Justice Act— 30

(a) if the sentence was imposed under section 226B of that Act, the offender shall be treated as if the offender had been sentenced under section 226A of that Act, and

(b) if the sentence was imposed under section 228 of that Act, the offender shall be treated as if the offender had been sentenced under section 227 of that Act.” 35

(4) In subsection (5)(c), after “section” insert “226B or”.

- 8 In section 100 (offenders under 18: detention and training orders) in subsection (1) after “226” insert “, 226B”. 40

- 9 In section 106A(1) (interaction of detention and training orders with sentences of detention), in paragraph (b) of the definition of “sentence of detention”, after “section” insert “226B or”.



*Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (c. 43)*

- 10 The Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 is amended as follows.
- 11 In section 62 (release on licence etc: conditions as to monitoring) in subsection (5)(f), after “226” insert “, 226B”.
- 12 In section 64 (release on licence: drug testing requirements) in subsection (5)(f), after “226” insert “, 226B”. 5

*Sexual Offences Act 2003 (c. 42)*

- 13 In section 131 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 (young offenders: application), in paragraph (l), before “228” insert “226B or”.

*Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)* 10

- 14 The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- 15 In section 153 (length of discretionary custodial sentences: general provision) in subsection (2) before “227(2)” insert “226A(4), 226B(2)”.
- 16 In section 156 (pre-sentence reports and other requirements) in subsection (3)(a) after “226(1)(b),” insert “section 226A(1)(b), section 226B(1)(b)”. 15
- 17 In section 235 (detention under sections 226 and 228) after “226” insert “, 226B”.
- 18 In the heading of that section after “226” insert “, 226B”.
- 19 In section 327 (arrangements for assessing etc risks posed by certain offenders: interpretation) in subsection (3)(b)(vi) after “section” insert “226B or”. 20

*Offender Management Act 2007 (c. 21)*

- 20 (1) Section 28 of the Offender Management Act 2007 (application of polygraph conditions for certain offenders released on licence) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)(a) after “section” insert “226A or”. 25
- (3) In subsection (3)(f) after “226” insert “, 226B”.

PART 2

TRANSITORY PROVISION

- 21 (1) In relation to any time before the coming into force of section 61 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (abolition of sentences of detention in a young offender institution, custody for life etc), Chapter 5 of Part 12 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (sentencing: dangerous offenders) has effect with the modifications in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3). 30
- (2) In section 226A (extended sentence for certain violent or sexual offences: persons 18 or over), at the end insert – 35
- “(10) In the case of a person aged at least 18 but under 21, this section has effect as if –

- (a) the reference in subsection (1)(c) to imprisonment for life were to custody for life, and
- (b) other references to imprisonment (including in the expression “extended sentence of imprisonment”) were to detention in a young offender institution.” 5
- (3) In section 226B (mandatory extended sentence for certain violent or sexual offences: persons under 18), in subsection (7), for “18” substitute “21”.
- 22 (1) In relation to any time before the repeal of section 30 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (protection of children: supplemental) by Schedule 10 to the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006, that section has effect with the modification in sub-paragraph (2). 10
- (2) In subsection (1), in paragraph (dd) of the definition of “qualifying sentence”, after “226” insert “, 226B”.

#### SCHEDULE 19

Section 116

- RELEASE OF NEW EXTENDED SENTENCE PRISONERS: CONSEQUENTIAL PROVISION 15
- 1 Chapter 6 of Part 12 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (sentencing: release and recall) (as amended by Chapter 4 of Part 3 of this Act) is amended as follows.
- 2 In section 237 (meaning of “fixed-term prisoner” etc), in subsection (1)(b), before “228” insert “226B or”.
- 3 In section 238 (power of court to recommend licence conditions), in subsection (4), after “Sentencing Act” insert “or section 226B”. 20
- 4 In section 240ZA (time remanded in custody to count as time served), in subsection (12) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), after “or section” insert “226B or”, and
- (b) in paragraph (b), after “or section” insert “226A or”. 25
- 5 (1) Section 250 (licence conditions) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4) –
- (a) before “227” insert “226A or”, and
- (b) before “228” insert “226B or”.
- (3) After subsection (5) insert – 30
- “(5A) In respect of a prisoner serving an extended sentence imposed under section 226A or 226B whose release is directed by the Board under section 246A(5), a licence under –
- (a) section 246A(5) (initial release), or
- (b) section 255C (release after recall), 35
- may not include conditions referred to in subsection (4)(b)(ii) unless the Board directs the Secretary of State to include them.”
- 6 In section 255A (further release after recall), in subsection (7)(a) (meaning of “extended sentence prisoner”) after “section” insert “226A, 226B,”.
- 7 (1) Section 260 (early removal of prisoners liable to removal from UK) is amended as follows. 40

- (2) After subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) If a fixed-term prisoner serving an extended sentence imposed under section 226A or 226B –
- (a) is liable to removal from the United Kingdom, and
  - (b) has not been removed from prison under this section during the period mentioned in subsection (1),
- the Secretary of State may remove the prisoner from prison under this section at any time after the end of that period. 5
- (2B) Subsection (2A) applies whether or not the Parole Board has directed the prisoner’s release under section 246A.” 10
- (3) In subsection (5), after “244” (but before “, 247”) insert “, 246A”.
- (4) In subsection (7), before paragraph (a) insert –
- “(za) in relation to a prisoner serving an extended sentence imposed under section 226A or 226B, has the meaning given by paragraph (a) or (b) of the definition in section 246A(8);” 15
- 8 (1) Section 261 (re-entry to UK of offender removed early) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (5)(b) for “or 244” substitute “, 244 or 246A”.
- (3) In subsection (6), in the definition of “requisite custodial period”, before paragraph (a) insert – 20
- “(za) in relation to a prisoner serving an extended sentence imposed under section 226A or 226B, has the meaning given by paragraph (a) or (b) of the definition in section 246A(8);”.
- 9 In section 263 (concurrent terms), in subsection (4), before “228” insert “226B or”. 25
- 10 (1) Section 264 (consecutive terms) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (6)(a) (definition of “custodial period”), before sub-paragraph (i) insert –
- “(zi) in relation to an extended sentence imposed under section 226A or 226B, means two-thirds of the appropriate custodial term determined by the court under that section,” 30
- (3) In subsection (7) before “228” insert “226B or”.
- 11 In section 265 (restriction on consecutive sentences for released prisoners), in subsection (2), before “228” insert “226B or”. 35

SCHEDULE 20

Section 121

PENALTY NOTICES FOR DISORDERLY BEHAVIOUR

*Criminal Justice and Police Act 2001 (c. 16)*

- 1 Chapter 1 of Part 1 of the Criminal Justice and Police Act 2001 (on the spot penalties for disorderly behaviour) is amended as follows. 40

- 
- 2 In section 1 (offences leading to penalties on the spot) omit subsections (4) and (5) (provision about orders under subsections (2) and (3) of that section).
- 3 (1) Section 2 (penalty notices) is amended as follows
- (2) In subsection (1) for “10” substitute “18”.
- (3) After subsection (1) insert – 5
- “(1A) If the offence mentioned in subsection (1) is a relevant penalty offence, the constable may give the person a penalty notice with an education option.”
- (4) Omit subsection (2) (requirement that constable giving a penalty notice other than at a police station be in uniform). 10
- (5) Omit subsection (3) (requirement that constable giving a penalty notice at a police station be an authorised constable).
- (6) In subsection (4) –
- (a) after “Chapter”, in the first place it appears, insert “–
- “approved educational course” means an educational course run as part of an educational course scheme established by –
- (a) in the case of a notice given by a constable of the British Transport Police Force, the Chief Constable of that force, and 15
- (b) in any other case, the chief officer of police for the area in which the notice is given; 20
- “educational course scheme” means a scheme established by a chief officer of police under section 2A;”, and 25
- (b) at the end insert “;
- “penalty notice with an education option” means a penalty notice that also offers the opportunity to discharge any liability to be convicted of the offence to which the notice relates by – 30
- (a) completing an approved educational course, and
- (b) paying the course fee.”
- (7) After subsection (4) insert –
- “(4A) In this section, “relevant penalty offence” means a penalty offence in relation to which there is an approved educational course. 35
- (4B) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the revocation of penalty notices.”
- (8) Omit subsection (5) (definition of “authorised constable”).
- (9) Omit subsections (6) to (9) (Secretary of State order making power and associated provision). 40

4 After section 2 (penalty notices) insert –

**“2A Educational course schemes**

- (1) A chief officer of police may establish an educational course scheme under this section in relation to one or more kinds of penalty offence committed in the chief officer’s area. 5
- (2) An educational course scheme must include arrangements –
  - (a) for educational courses relating to the penalty offences to which the scheme relates to be provided to persons who are given penalty notices with an education option, and
  - (b) for a course fee set by the chief officer of police – 10
    - (i) to be paid by a person who attends an educational course, and
    - (ii) to be refunded in such circumstances (if any) as the chief officer considers appropriate.
- (3) The purpose of an educational course mentioned in subsection (2) must be to reduce the likelihood of those who take the course committing the penalty offence, or penalty offences, to which the course relates. 15
- (4) An educational course may be provided by any person who, and have any content that, the chief officer of police considers appropriate given its purpose. 20
- (5) The Secretary of State may by regulations –
  - (a) provide that the fee mentioned in subsection (2)(b) may not be –
    - (i) less than an amount specified in the regulations, or 25
    - (ii) more than an amount so specified;
  - (b) make provision for and in connection with the disclosure, for the purpose of running an educational course scheme, of relevant personal information between –
    - (i) a person who is involved in the provision of an educational course under the scheme, 30
    - (ii) the chief officer of police who established the scheme, and
    - (iii) any other person specified or described in the regulations; 35
  - (c) make provision about the use of relevant personal information for that purpose;
  - (d) place restrictions on the disclosure or use of relevant personal information.
- (6) In subsection (5) “relevant personal information” means any information that relates to, and identifies, a person who has been given a penalty notice with an education option. 40
- (7) In this section’s application in relation to the Chief Constable of the British Transport Police Force, subsection (1) has effect as if the reference to one or more kinds of penalty offence committed in a chief officer of police’s area were a reference to one or more kinds of penalty offence – 45

- (a) committed at, or in relation to, any of the places mentioned in section 31(1)(a) to (f) of the Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003 (places where a constable of the British Transport Police Force has the powers of a constable), or
- (b) otherwise relating to a railway. 5
- (8) In subsection (7) “railway” means –
- (a) a railway within the meaning given by section 67(1) of the Transport and Works Act 1992 (interpretation), or
- (b) a tramway within the meaning given by that section.”
- 5 (1) Section 3 (amount of penalty and form of penalty notice) is amended as follows. 10
- (2) Omit subsection (1A) (Secretary of State may specify different penalties for persons of different ages).
- (3) After subsection (3) insert –
- “(3A) The Secretary of State may by regulations require information in addition to that mentioned in subsection (3) to be included in, or to be provided with, a penalty notice with an education option.” 15
- (4) Omit subsections (5) and (6) (provision relating to orders under that section).
- 6 (1) Section 4 (effect of penalty notice) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (5) for “If” substitute “In the case of a penalty notice that is not a penalty notice with an education option, if”. 20
- (3) After subsection (5) insert –
- “(6) In the case of a penalty notice with an education option, a sum equal to one and a half times the amount of the penalty may be registered under section 8 for enforcement against A as a fine if subsection (7) or (8) applies. 25
- (7) This subsection applies if, by the end of the suspended enforcement period, A does not –
- (a) ask to attend an approved educational course relating to the offence to which the notice relates, 30
- (b) pay the penalty, or
- (c) request to be tried.
- (8) This subsection applies if –
- (a) A has asked, by the end of the suspended enforcement period, to attend an approved educational course of the kind mentioned in subsection (7)(a), and 35
- (b) A does not, in accordance with regulations made under subsection (9) –
- (i) pay the course fee,
- (ii) start such a course, or 40
- (iii) complete such a course.
- (9) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision –
- (a) as to the time by which A is required to do each of the things mentioned in subsection (8)(b)(i) to (iii) (including provision

- allowing those times to be specified by a chief officer of police for the purposes of an educational course scheme established by that officer);
- (b) allowing A to request an extension of the time to do the things mentioned in subsection (8)(b)(i) to (iii) (including provision as to who should determine such a request and on what basis); 5
- (c) as to the procedure to be followed in relation to requests for extensions of time (including provision allowing the procedure to be determined by a chief officer of police for the purposes of an educational course scheme established by that officer); 10
- (d) as to the consequences of a request for an extension of time being granted (including provision specifying circumstances in which a chief officer of police may require a course fee to be paid again in order to avoid a sum being registered for enforcement as a fine under section 8); 15
- (e) as to the consequences of A failing to attend a course that A has arranged to attend (including provision as to who should determine what those consequences are and on what basis); 20
- (f) specifying circumstances in which A is, for the purposes of this Chapter, to be regarded as having completed, or having not completed, an approved educational course (including provision as to who should determine whether those circumstances have arisen and how that should be determined). 25
- (10) Regulations made under subsection (9)(b), (e) or (f) may permit a person to delegate the function of making a determination.”
- 7 (1) Section 5 (general restriction on proceedings) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for “until the end of” substitute “during”. 30
- (3) After subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) Proceedings for an offence to which a penalty notice with an education option relates may not be brought against a person who has, by the end of the suspended enforcement period, asked to attend an approved educational course relating to the offence, unless section 4(8) applies. 35
- (2B) If the person to whom a penalty notice with an education option is given –
- (a) completes, in accordance with regulations made under section 4(9), an approved educational course relating to the offence to which the notice relates, and 40
- (b) pays the course fee in accordance with those regulations, no proceedings may be brought for the offence.”
- 8 In section 6 (Secretary of State’s guidance) after paragraph (b) insert –
- “(ba) about educational course schemes;”. 45
- 9 In section 8(4) (registration certificates) after “section 4(5)” insert “or (6)”. 45
- 10 (1) Section 10 (enforcement of fines) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (6) for “If” substitute “Subject to any regulations made under subsection (7), if”.
- (3) After subsection (6) insert –
- “(7) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to the directions that the court may, or must, give or the orders it may, or must, make if it sets aside a fine relating to a sum registered under section 8 on the basis that section 4(8) applies.” 5
- 11 After section 10 insert –
- “Orders and regulations*
- 10A Orders and regulations under Chapter 1** 10
- (1) Any power of the Secretary of State to make an order or regulations under this Chapter is exercisable by statutory instrument.
- (2) Any power of the Secretary of State to make an order or regulations under this Chapter includes –
- (a) power to make different provision for different cases, circumstances or areas, and 15
- (b) power to make incidental, supplementary, consequential, transitional or transitory provision or savings.
- (3) The Secretary of State may not make an order under section 1(2) unless a draft of the statutory instrument containing the order (whether alone or with other provisions) has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament. 20
- (4) A statutory instrument that contains an order or regulations made under this Chapter and is not subject to any requirement that a draft of the instrument be laid before, and approved by a resolution of, both Houses of Parliament, is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.” 25
- 12 (1) Section 11 (interpretation of Chapter 1) is amended as follows.
- (2) Before the definition of “chief officer of police” insert –
- ““approved educational course” has the meaning given in section 2(4);” 30
- (3) After the definition of “defaulter” insert –
- ““educational course scheme” has the meaning given in section 2(4);”.
- (4) After the definition of “penalty notice” insert – 35
- ““penalty notice with an education option” has the meaning given in section 2(4);”.

*Consequential amendments*

- 13 In section 64A of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (photographing of suspects etc) in subsection (1B)(d) omit “in uniform” in the first place those words appear. 40
- 14 (1) The Police Reform Act 2002 is amended as follows.



- (2) In section 43(7) (railway safety accreditation schemes: Secretary of State power to give an accredited person the powers of a constable in uniform, or an authorised constable, to issue fixed penalty notices) omit “in uniform and of an authorised constable”.
- (3) In paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 (community support officers’ powers to issue fixed penalty notices) in sub-paragraph (2)(a) omit “in uniform and of an authorised constable”. 5
- (4) In paragraph 1 of Schedule 5 (accredited persons’ powers to issue fixed penalty notices) in sub-paragraph (2)(aa) omit “in uniform”.
- (5) In paragraph 1 of Schedule 5A (accredited inspectors’ powers to issue fixed penalty notices) in sub-paragraph (2) omit “in uniform”. 10
- 15 In consequence of the amendments made by paragraphs 3 and 5 of this Schedule, omit section 87 of the Anti-social Behaviour Act 2003.

SCHEDULE 21

Section 124

YOUTH CAUTIONS: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

15

*Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 (c. 53)*

- 1 The Rehabilitation of Offenders Act 1974 is amended as follows.
- 2 In section 8A(2) (meaning of “caution”) –
- (a) omit paragraph (c), and
  - (b) in paragraph (d) – 20
    - (i) omit “, reprimand or warning”, and
    - (ii) for “paragraphs (a) to (c)” substitute “paragraph (a) or (b)”.
- 3 In Schedule 2 (protection for spent cautions) in paragraph 2(1)(e) (meaning of “ancillary circumstances”: things done in connection with a rehabilitation programme) – 25
- (a) for “warning under section 65” substitute “youth caution given under section 66ZA”, and
  - (b) for “66(2)” substitute “66ZB(2) or (3)”.

*Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (c. 60)*

- 4 The Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 is amended as follows. 30
- 5 In section 34(5)(b) (requirement to release without bail unless proceedings may be taken or person may be reprimanded or warned), for the words from “reprimanded” to “65” substitute “given a youth caution under section 66ZA”.
- 6 In section 37B(9)(b) (consultation with Director of Public Prosecutions: meaning of “caution”), for “warning or reprimand under section 65” substitute “youth caution under section 66ZA”. 35
- 7 (1) Section 61 (fingerprinting) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (6) (power to fingerprint without consent in case of conviction etc for recordable offence) –
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “or”,
  - (b) for “or” at the end of paragraph (b) substitute “and”, and
  - (c) omit paragraph (c) and the “and” at the end of that paragraph. 5
- (3) In subsection (6ZA)(a) (conditions for application of subsection (6)), for “, cautioned or warned or reprimanded” substitute “or cautioned”.
- 8 (1) Section 63 (non-intimate samples) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3B) (power to take non-intimate sample without consent in case of conviction etc for recordable offence) – 10
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “or”,
  - (b) for “or” at the end of paragraph (b) substitute “and”, and
  - (c) omit paragraph (c) and the “and” at the end of that paragraph.
- (3) In subsection (3BA)(a) (conditions for application of subsection (3B)), for “, cautioned or warned or reprimanded” substitute “or cautioned”. 15
- 9 In section 64ZC(6)(a) (destruction of data relating to a person subject to a control order: persons to be treated as having been convicted of an offence) –
- (a) for “or” at the end of sub-paragraph (i) substitute “and”, and
  - (b) omit sub-paragraph (ii) and the “and” at the end of that sub-paragraph. 20
- 10 In section 64ZI(3) (persons to be treated as having been convicted of an offence for the purposes of sections 64ZB and 64ZD to 64ZH) omit paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding that paragraph.
- 11 (1) Schedule 2A (fingerprinting and samples: power to require attendance at police station) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In paragraph 3 (attendance for fingerprinting: persons convicted etc of an offence in England and Wales) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (2)(a) for “, cautioned or warned or reprimanded” substitute “or cautioned”, and 30
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (5) for “, caution or warning or reprimand” substitute “or caution”.
- (3) In paragraph 11 (attendance for taking of non-intimate sample: persons convicted etc of an offence in England and Wales) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (2)(a) for “, cautioned or warned or reprimanded” substitute “or cautioned”, and 35
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (5)(a) for “, caution or warning or reprimand” substitute “or caution”.
- Police and Criminal Evidence (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/1341 (N.I. 12))*
- 12 In Article 64ZC(6)(a) of the Police and Criminal Evidence (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (persons to be treated as having been convicted of an offence for the purposes of paragraph (1)) – 40
- (a) for “or” at the end of paragraph (i) substitute “and”, and
  - (b) omit paragraph (ii) and the “and” at the end of that paragraph.

*Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18)*

- 13 In section 20D(6) of the Jobseekers Act 1995 (meaning of “cautioned” for the purposes of section 20C) omit paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding that paragraph.

*Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (c. 37)*

5

- 14 The Crime and Disorder Act 1998 is amended as follows.
- 15 In section 38(4) (meaning of “youth justice services”) –
- (a) for paragraph (aa) substitute –
    - “(aa) the provision of assistance to persons determining whether youth cautions should be given under section 66ZA below;”, and
  - (b) in paragraph (b) for “66(2)” substitute “66ZB(2) or (3)”.
- 16 In section 66H (interpretation) –
- (a) in paragraph (a) (definition of “appropriate adult”) for “65(7)” substitute “66ZA(7)”, and
  - (b) after paragraph (e) insert –
    - “(ea) “youth caution” has the meaning given by section 66ZA(1);”.

10

15

- 17 In section 121(6) (provisions extending to Scotland) omit paragraph (c).

*Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (c. 6)*

20

- 18 The Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 is amended as follows.
- 19 In section 12(2) (which makes the provision for conditional discharge in that section subject to section 66(4) of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998) –
- (a) for “66(4)” substitute “66ZB(6)”, and
  - (b) for “reprimands and warnings” substitute “youth cautions”.
- 20 In Schedule 9 (consequential amendments) omit paragraph 198.

25

*Terrorism Act 2000 (c. 11)*

- 21 Schedule 8 to the Terrorism Act 2000 (detention) is amended as follows.
- 22 In paragraph 14F(3) (persons to be treated as having been convicted of an offence for the purposes of paragraphs 14B to 14E) omit paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding that paragraph.
- 23 In paragraph 20F(3) (persons to be treated as having been convicted of an offence for the purposes of paragraphs 20B to 20E) omit “, or has been warned or reprimanded,”.

30

*Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (c. 43)*

35

- 24 In section 56 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (young offenders: reprimands and warnings) omit subsection (1).

*Sexual Offences Act 2003 (c. 42)*

- 25 In section 133(1) of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 (interpretation of Part 2), in the definition of “cautioned” omit paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding that paragraph.

*Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)*

5

- 26 In section 327B(9) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (meaning of “cautioned” for the purposes of that section) omit paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding that paragraph.

*Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21)*

- 27 In section 75(6) of the Childcare Act 2006 (disqualification from registration: interpretation) omit the definition of “caution”.

10

*Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (c. 4)*

- 28 (1) The Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 is amended as follows.  
(2) In section 48(1) (which introduces Schedule 9 to that Act) omit paragraph (b) and the “and” preceding that paragraph.  
(3) In Schedule 9 (alternatives to prosecution for persons under 18) omit paragraph 2.

15

*Counter-Terrorism Act 2008 (c. 28)*

- 29 In section 18A(4) of the Counter-Terrorism Act 2008 (persons to be treated as having been convicted of an offence for the purposes of section 18(3B) and (3C)), omit paragraph (b) and the “or” preceding that paragraph.

20

## SCHEDULE 22

Section 128

## KNIVES AND OFFENSIVE WEAPONS: MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

*Prevention of Crime Act 1953 (c. 14)*

- 1 In section 2(3) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953 (extent) for “shall not extend to Northern Ireland” substitute “extends to England and Wales only”.

25

*Mental Health Act 1983 (c. 20)*

- 2 (1) Section 37(1A) of the Mental Health Act 1983 (powers of courts to order hospital admission or guardianship) is amended as follows.  
(2) Before paragraph (a) insert—  
“*(za)* under section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953,”.  
(3) After paragraph (a) insert—  
“*(aa)* under section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988,”.

30

*Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (c. 60)*

- 3 In section 1(8A) of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 (power of constable to stop and search persons, vehicles etc) after “139” insert “or 139AA”.

*Criminal Justice Act 1988 (c. 33)*

5

- 4 The Criminal Justice Act 1988 is amended as follows.
- 5 (1) Section 36(2)(b) (reviews of sentencing) is amended as follows.
- (2) Before sub-paragraph (i) insert –  
“(zi) section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953;”.
- (3) After sub-paragraph (i) insert – 10  
“(ia) section 139AA(7) of this Act;”.
- 6 (1) Section 139B (power of entry to search for articles with a blade or point and offensive weapons) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) after “139A” insert “or 139AA”.
- (3) In subsection (4) – 15  
(a) after “In the application of this section to Northern Ireland” insert “ –  
“(a) ”;  
(b) at the end add “, and  
(b) the reference in subsection (1) to section 139AA is  
omitted.” 20
- 7 In section 172(3) (provisions extending to Northern Ireland) for “sections 139 to 139B” substitute –  
“section 139;  
section 139A;  
section 139B;” 25

*Youth Justice and Criminal Evidence Act 1999 (c. 23)*

- 8 (1) Schedule 1A to the Youth Justice and Criminal Evidence Act 1999 (relevant offences for the purposes of section 17: witnesses eligible for assistance on grounds of fear or distress about testifying) is amended as follows.
- (2) After paragraph 9 insert – 30  
“9A An offence under section 1A of that Act (threatening with a weapon in public).
- (3) After paragraph 26 insert –  
“26A An offence under section 139AA of that Act (threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon).” 35

*Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 (c. 6)*

- 9 The Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000 is amended as follows.
- 10 In section 12(1) (absolute and conditional discharge) for “section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968” substitute “section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime

	Act 1953, section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968, section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988”.	
11	In section 100 (offenders under 18: detention and training orders) after subsection (1) insert –	
	“(1A) Subsection (1) applies with the omission of paragraph (b) in the case of an offence the sentence for which falls to be imposed under these provisions –	5
	(a) section 1A of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953 (threatening with weapon in public);	
	(b) section 139AA of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon).”	10
12	In section 130(2) (compensation orders against convicted persons) for “section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968” substitute “section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953, section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968, section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988”.	15
13	In section 146(2) (driving disqualification for any offence) for “section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968” substitute “section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953, section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968, section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988”.	
14	(1) Section 164(3) (further interpretative provisions) is amended as follows.	20
	(2) After paragraph (a) insert –	
	“(aa) under section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953,”.	
	(3) After paragraph (b) insert –	
	“(ba) under section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988,”.	
	<i>Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c 44)</i>	25
15	The Criminal Justice Act 2003 is amended as follows.	
16	(1) Section 142(2)(c) (purposes of sentencing: offenders aged 18 or over) is amended as follows.	
	(2) After “falls to be imposed” insert “under section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953 (minimum sentence for offence of threatening with offensive weapon in public),”.	30
	(3) After “firearms offences),” insert “under section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (minimum sentence for offence of threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon),”.	
17	(1) Section 144 (reduction in sentences for early guilty pleas) is amended as follows.	35
	(2) In subsection (2) –	
	(a) for “subsection (2) of section 110 or 111 of the Sentencing Act” substitute “a provision mentioned in subsection (3)”;	
	(b) for “that subsection” in each place substitute “that provision”.	40
	(3) After that subsection insert –	
	“(3) The provisions referred to in subsection (2) are –	
	section 1A(6)(a) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953;	

- section 110(2) of the Sentencing Act;  
section 111(2) of the Sentencing Act;  
section 139AA(8)(a) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988.
- (4) In the case of an offence the sentence for which falls to be imposed under a provision mentioned in subsection (5), nothing in that provision prevents the court from imposing any sentence that it considers appropriate after taking into account any matter referred to in subsection (1) of this section. 5
- (5) The provisions referred to in subsection (4) are –  
section 1A(6)(b) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953; 10  
section 139AA(8)(b) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988.”
- 18 (1) Section 150 (community sentence not available where sentence fixed by law etc) is amended as follows.
- (2) After paragraph (a) insert –  
“(aa) falls to be imposed under section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953 (minimum sentence for offence of threatening with offensive weapon in public),” 15
- (3) After paragraph (b) insert –  
“(ba) falls to be imposed under section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (minimum sentence for offence of threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon),” 20
- 19 In section 152(1)(b) (general restrictions on imposing discretionary custodial sentences) for “under section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968 (c. 27),” substitute “under section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953, under section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968, under section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988,” 25
- 20 In section 153(2) (length of discretionary custodial sentences: general provision) for “section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968 (c. 27),” substitute “section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953, section 51A(2) of the Firearms Act 1968, section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988,” 30
- 21 (1) Section 305(4) (interpretation of Part 12) is amended as follows.
- (2) Before paragraph (a) insert –  
“(za) a sentence falls to be imposed under subsection (5) of section 1A of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953 if it is required by that subsection and the court is not of the opinion there mentioned,” 35
- (3) After paragraph (a) insert –  
“(aa) a sentence falls to be imposed under subsection (7) of section 139AA of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 if it is required by that subsection and the court is not of the opinion there mentioned,” 40

*Armed Forces Act 2006 (c. 52)*

- 22 The Armed Forces Act 2006 is amended as follows.

- 23 After section 227 (firearms offences) insert –
- “227A Offences of threatening with a weapon in public or on school premises**
- (1) This section applies if –
- (a) a person aged 18 or over is convicted by a court of an offence under section 42 (criminal conduct); and 5
- (b) the corresponding offence under the law of England and Wales is an offence under section 1A of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953 or section 139AA of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon in public or on school premises). 10
- (2) The court must impose a sentence of imprisonment for a term of at least 6 months unless the court is of the opinion that there are particular circumstances which –
- (a) relate to the offence or to the offender, and 15
- (b) would make it unjust to do so in all the circumstances.
- (3) In relation to times before the coming into force of section 61 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000, the reference in subsection (2) to a sentence of imprisonment, in relation to an offender aged under 21 at the time of conviction, is to be read as a reference to a sentence of detention in a young offender institution.” 20
- 24 In section 237(3) (duty to have regard to purposes of sentencing etc) after paragraph (b) insert “;
- (c) an offence the sentence for which falls to be imposed under section 227A(2).” 25
- 25 In section 239 (reduction in sentences for guilty pleas) at the end insert –
- “(6) Nothing in section 227A(2) prevents the court, after taking into account any matter mentioned in subsection (2) of this section, from imposing any sentence which is at least 80% of that specified in section 227A(2).” 30
- 26 In section 260(1)(b) (discretionary custodial sentences: general restrictions) for “227” substitute “227A”.
- 27 In section 261(3) (length of discretionary custodial sentences: general provision) for “and 227” substitute “, 227 and 227A”.
- 28 In section 273(6)(b) (review of unduly lenient sentence by Court Martial Appeal Court) for “or 227” substitute “, 227 or 227A”.
- 29 (1) Paragraph 12 of Schedule 2 (“Schedule 2 offences”) is amended as follows.
- (2) After sub-paragraph (r) insert –
- “(ra) an offence under section 1A of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953 (threatening with weapon in public);”.
- 40
- (3) In paragraph (ai) –
- (a) after “134” insert “, 139AA”;
- (b) after “torture,” insert “threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon,”.



*Coroners and Justice Act 2009 (c. 25)*

- 30 (1) Section 125(6) of the Coroners and Justice Act 2009 (sentencing guidelines: duty of court) is amended as follows.
- (2) After paragraph (e) insert—  
 “(ea) section 1A(5) of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953 (minimum sentence for offence of threatening with offensive weapon in public);” 5
- (3) After paragraph (f) insert—  
 “(fa) section 139AA(7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (minimum sentence for offence of threatening with article with blade or point or offensive weapon);” 10

SCHEDULE 23

Section 129

CAUSING SERIOUS INJURY BY DANGEROUS DRIVING: MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

*Road Traffic Act 1988 (c. 52)* 15

- 1 In section 13A(1) of the Road Traffic Act 1988 (disapplication of sections 1 to 3 for authorised motoring events) after “sections 1,” insert “1A,”.

*Road Traffic Offenders Act 1988 (c. 53)*

- 2 The Road Traffic Offenders Act 1988 is amended as follows.
- 3 In section 23(1A) (alternative verdicts in Scotland) after paragraph (a) insert— 20  
 “(aa) an offence under section 1A of that Act (causing serious injury by dangerous driving);”.
- 4 (1) Section 24 (alternative verdicts: general) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (A2) after paragraph (a) insert— 25  
 “(aa) an offence under section 1A of that Act (causing serious injury by dangerous driving);”.
- (3) In the table in subsection (1) in the appropriate place insert—

“Section 1A (causing serious injury by dangerous driving)	Section 2 (dangerous driving)	30
	Section 3 (careless, and inconsiderate, driving)”.	

- 5 In section 34(4) (disqualification for certain offences) after paragraph (a)(ii) and the “or” after it insert— 35  
 “(iia) an offence under section 1A of that Act (causing serious injury by dangerous driving), or”.

- 6 In section 36(2)(b) (disqualification until test is passed) after “(causing death by dangerous driving)” insert “, section 1A (causing serious injury by dangerous driving)”.
- 7 In section 45(6) (effect of endorsement of counterparts) (until its repeal by the Road Safety Act 2006 comes into force) – 5  
 (a) after “section 1” insert “, 1A”;  
 (b) after “causing death by dangerous driving” insert “, causing serious injury by dangerous driving”.
- 8 In section 45A(4) (effect of endorsement of driving records) as substituted by the Road Safety Act 2006 – 10  
 (a) after “section 1” insert “, 1A”;  
 (b) after “causing death by dangerous driving” insert “, causing serious injury by dangerous driving”.
- 9 In the table in Schedule 1 (application of provisions including sections 11 and 12(1): evidence as to driver and proof of identity) in the appropriate place insert – 15

“RTA section 1A	Causing serious injury by dangerous driving.	Sections 11 and 12(1) of this Act.”
-----------------	--	-------------------------------------

*Crime (International Co-operation) Act 2003 (c. 32)*

- 10 In paragraph 3 of Schedule 3 to the Crime (International Co-operation) Act 2003 (application of duty to give notice to foreign authorities of driving disqualification of a non-UK resident) after sub-paragraph (a) insert – 20  
 “(aa) section 1A (causing serious injury by dangerous driving),”.

*Armed Forces Act 2006 (c. 52)*

- 11 In paragraph 12(aj) of Schedule 2 to the Armed Forces Act 2006 (“Schedule 2 offences”) – 25  
 (a) after “section 1,” insert “1A,”;  
 (b) after “causing death by dangerous driving,” insert “causing serious injury by dangerous driving”.

# Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Bill

---

---

A

## B I L L

To make provision about legal aid; to make further provision about funding legal services; to make provision about costs and other amounts awarded in civil and criminal proceedings; to make provision about referral fees in connection with the provision of legal services; to make provision about sentencing offenders, including provision about release on licence or otherwise; to make provision about bail and about remand otherwise than on bail; to make provision about the employment, payment and transfer of persons detained in prisons and other institutions; to make provision about penalty notices for disorderly behaviour and cautions; to create new offences of threatening with a weapon in public or on school premises and of causing serious injury by dangerous driving; to create a new offence relating to squatting; and to amend section 76 of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008.

*Brought from the Commons on 3rd November 2011*

---

*Ordered to be Printed, 3rd November 2011*

---

© Parliamentary copyright House of Lords and House of Commons 2011

*This publication may be reproduced under the terms of the Parliamentary Click-Use Licence, available online through The National Archives website at [www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/information-management/our-services/parliamentary-licence-information.htm](http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/information-management/our-services/parliamentary-licence-information.htm)*

*Enquiries to The National Archives, Kew, Richmond, Surrey, TW9 4DU;*

*email: [psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk](mailto:psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk)*

*£x.xx*